

A meeting of the **CABINET** will be held in the **CIVIC SUITE 0.1A, PATHFINDER HOUSE, ST MARY'S STREET, HUNTINGDON, PE29 3TN** on **THURSDAY, 17 JULY 2014** at **7:00 PM** and you are requested to attend for the transaction of the following business:-

## **APOLOGIES**

- ( Contact  
(01480)
- 1. MINUTES**

To approve as a correct record the Minutes of the meeting held on 10<sup>th</sup> July 2014 – to follow.

**Mrs H J Taylor  
388008**
  - 2. MEMBERS' INTERESTS**

To receive from Members declarations as to disclosable pecuniary or other interests in relation to any item. See Notes below.
  - 3. BUDGET MONITORING 2014/15 REVENUE AND CAPITAL**  
(Pages 1 - 8)

To receive a report by the Head of Resources.

**C Mason  
388157**
  - 4. 2013/14 TREASURY MANAGEMENT ANNUAL REPORT**  
(Pages 9 - 20)

By way of a report by the Head of Resources, to receive the annual report on treasury management.

**C Mason  
388157**
  - 5. CAMBRIDGESHIRE HOME IMPROVEMENT AGENCY - 2 YEAR REVIEW** (Pages 21 - 28)

To receive a report from the Housing Strategy Manager detailing the annual operating review of the Home Improvement Agency Shared Service

**Ms J Emmerton  
388203**
  - 6. CAMBRIDGESHIRE LONG TERM TRANSPORT STRATEGY & LOCAL TRANSPORT PLAN 3 REFRESH** (Pages 29 - 38)

To receive a report from the Head of Development on the Cambridgeshire Long-Term Transport Strategy.

**P Bland  
388430**
  - 7. DRAFT HUNTINGDON & GODMANCHESTER MARKET TOWN TRANSPORT STRATEGY** (Pages 39 - 72)

To consider a report by the Head of Development on the Huntingdon and Godmanchester Market Town Transport

**P Bland  
388430**

Strategy.

**8. REVIEW OF RISK MANAGEMENT STRATEGY** (Pages 73 - 94)

To consider a report by the Internal Audit & Risk Manager detailing the outcome of a review of the Risk Management Strategy.

**D Harwood  
388115**

**9. A TREE STRATEGY FOR HUNTINGDONSHIRE** (Pages 95 - 292)

To receive a report from the Planning Services Manager (Policy) proposing the adoption of a Tree Strategy for Huntingdonshire.

**P Bland  
388430**

A copy of the Strategy has been circulated around to Cabinet Members only.

**10. LOVES FARM COMMUNITY BUILDING - COMMITMENT TO CONTRACT**

To receive a report by the Projects and Assets Manager seeking approval for the scheme's contract – to follow.

**C Allen  
388380**

**11. SHARED SERVICES BUILDING CONTROL** (Pages 293 - 300)

To receive a report from the Head of Development.

**A Moffatt  
388400**

**12. REPRESENTATION ON ORGANISATIONS 2014/15** (Pages 301 - 308)

To consider a report by the Head of Legal and Democratic Services in relation to the appointment/nomination of representatives to serve on a variety of organisations.

**Mrs H J Taylor  
388008**

Dated this 9 day of July 2014



Head of Paid Service

**Notes**

**1. Disclosable Pecuniary Interests**

(1) *Members are required to declare any disclosable pecuniary interests and unless you have obtained dispensation, cannot discuss or vote on the matter at the meeting and must also leave the room whilst the matter is being debated or voted on.*

(2) *A Member has a disclosable pecuniary interest if it -*

- (a) relates to you, or
- (b) is an interest of -

- (i) your spouse or civil partner; or
- (ii) a person with whom you are living as husband and wife; or
- (iii) a person with whom you are living as if you were civil partners

and you are aware that the other person has the interest.

- (3) Disclosable pecuniary interests includes -

- (a) any employment or profession carried out for profit or gain;
- (b) any financial benefit received by the Member in respect of expenses incurred carrying out his or her duties as a Member (except from the Council);
- (c) any current contracts with the Council;
- (d) any beneficial interest in land/property within the Council's area;
- (e) any licence for a month or longer to occupy land in the Council's area;
- (f) any tenancy where the Council is landlord and the Member (or person in (2)(b) above) has a beneficial interest; or
- (g) a beneficial interest (above the specified level) in the shares of any body which has a place of business or land in the Council's area.

#### **Non-Statutory Disclosable Interests**

- (4) If a Member has a non-statutory disclosable interest then you are required to declare that interest, but may remain to discuss and vote providing you do not breach the overall Nolan principles.

- (5) A Member has a non-statutory disclosable interest where -

- (a) a decision in relation to the business being considered might reasonably be regarded as affecting the well-being or financial standing of you or a member of your family or a person with whom you have a close association to a greater extent than it would affect the majority of the council tax payers, rate payers or inhabitants of the ward or electoral area for which you have been elected or otherwise of the authority's administrative area, or
- (b) it relates to or is likely to affect a disclosable pecuniary interest, but in respect of a member of your family (other than specified in (2)(b) above) or a person with whom you have a close association, or
- (c) it relates to or is likely to affect any body –
  - (i) exercising functions of a public nature; or
  - (ii) directed to charitable purposes; or
  - (iii) one of whose principal purposes includes the influence of public opinion or policy (including any political party or trade union) of which you are a Member or in a position of control or management.

and that interest is not a disclosable pecuniary interest.

## **2. Filming, Photography and Recording at Council Meetings**

The District Council supports the principles of openness and transparency in its decision making and permits filming, recording and the taking of

*photographs at its meetings that are open to the public. It also welcomes the use of social networking and micro-blogging websites (such as Twitter and Facebook) to communicate with people about what is happening at meetings. Arrangements for these activities should operate in accordance with guidelines agreed by the Council and available via the following link [filming, photography and recording at council meetings.pdf](#) or on request from the Democratic Services Team. The Council understands that some members of the public attending its meetings may not wish to be filmed. The Chairman of the meeting will facilitate this preference by ensuring that any such request not to be recorded is respected.*

**Please contact Mrs H Taylor, Senior Democratic Services Officer, Tel No. 01480 388008/e-mail [Helen.Taylor@huntingdonshire.gov.uk](mailto:Helen.Taylor@huntingdonshire.gov.uk) /e-mail: if you have a general query on any Agenda Item, wish to tender your apologies for absence from the meeting, or would like information on any decision taken by the Cabinet.**

**Specific enquiries with regard to items on the Agenda should be directed towards the Contact Officer.**

**Members of the public are welcome to attend this meeting as observers except during consideration of confidential or exempt items of business.**

Agenda and enclosures can be viewed on the District Council's website – [www.huntingdonshire.gov.uk](http://www.huntingdonshire.gov.uk) (*under Councils and Democracy*).

**If you would like a translation of Agenda/Minutes/Reports or would like a large text version or an audio version please contact the Democratic Services Manager and we will try to accommodate your needs.**

***Emergency Procedure***

*In the event of the fire alarm being sounded and on the instruction of the Meeting Administrator, all attendees are requested to vacate the building via the closest emergency exit.*

## HUNTINGDONSHIRE DISTRICT COUNCIL

**Title:** Budget Monitoring 2014/15 (Revenue and Capital)

**Meeting/Date:** Cabinet  
17 July 2014

**Executive Portfolio:** Resources: Councillor J A Gray

**Report by:** Head of Resources

**Ward(s) affected:** All Wards

---

### Executive Summary:

#### **Revenue**

The net revenue budget approved in February 2014 was £20.870m. The variations forecast so far this year total a saving of £0.355m. This includes £0.125m of staff related savings and £0.120m of transport related savings.

	£m
Approved Budget	20.870
Forecast Variation	(0.355)
Forecast	20.515

Monitoring of savings, including those associated with “Facing the Future” will commence from the second quarter of 2014/15.

#### **Capital**

The net capital budget approved in February 2014 was £4.691m, in addition to this £1.945m of slippage from 2013/14 was carried forward to 2014/15. Resulting in a total updated budget of £6.636m.

At this early stage in the year 3 forecast variations have been reported totalling £0.046m of net additional expenditure. This includes £0.050m overspend on the Huntingdon Multi-Storey Car Park, which has resulted from addition requirements being added to the project specification as the build progressed.

	£m
Approved Budget	4.691
Slippage from 2013/14	1.945
Forecast Variation	0.046
Forecast	6.682

#### **New Homes Bonus**

Actual and band D equivalent new build are up against the profiled targets suggesting a gain of £168,000 on receipts in 2015/16. However growth for May was unusually high against the average and may not be sustained.

### **Recommendation(s):**

To note the forecast variation to the approved budgets detailed in this report.

## **1. PURPOSE**

- 1.1 To update members on any emerging variations to the 2014/15 approved revenue and capital budgets.

## **2. BACKGROUND**

### **Approved Budget**

- 2.1 In February 2014 the Council approved the following 2014/15 net expenditure budgets of:

- £20.870m for revenue, and
- £4.691m for capital.

- 2.2 In respect of:

- revenue, the Budget Requirement was £19.865m which required a £1.005m contribution from General Reserves that gave an estimated General Fund Balance of £9.027m at the 31<sup>st</sup> March 2015
- capital, this was to be financed from a mix of capital receipts, capital reserves and working capital.

## **3. REVENUE MONITORING 2014/15**

- 3.1 Only limited revenue budget monitoring takes place in April and May due to the priority to complete the final accounts, the need to wait for adjustments for debtors and creditors to be dealt with in the new financial year and the difficulty of making assumptions on very limited evidence.
- 3.2 This first monitoring therefore concentrates on the impact of items that occurred last year plus a few significant ones that are already emerging in the current year and these are illustrated in the table below.

<b>REVENUE BUDGETARY CONTROL 2014/15</b>	<b>Original Budget</b>	<b>Forecast outturn</b>	<b>Variation</b>
	<b>£000</b>	<b>£000</b>	<b>£000</b>
<b>Approved budget</b>	<b>20,870</b>	<b>20,870</b>	<b>0</b>
<b>Delayed spending from previous years</b>	<b>512</b>	<b>246</b>	<b>(266)</b>
<b>Delayed spending to 2014/15</b>	<b>(512)</b>	<b>(246)</b>	<b>266</b>
<b>Variations</b>			
Environmental Health Staff Redundancy		(65)	(65)
Other Staff Savings, street cleaning, engineers etc		(46)	(46)
Pensions Increase Act on-going savings		(14)	(14)
Operations - Transport Savings (based on historic underspending)		(120)	(120)
Additional Grant Receipts		(21)	(21)
Lower Cash Collection Costs – Car Parks		(20)	(20)
Lower Offices & Depots NDR Charges		(34)	(34)
Land Charges: volume change		(6)	(6)
Licence Fees: volume change		(9)	(9)
Other variations (each less than £9,000)		(20)	(20)
<b>Total variations</b>		<b>(355)</b>	<b>(355)</b>
<b>Forecast net spending</b>	<b>20,870</b>	<b>20,515</b>	<b>(355)</b>

	<b>£000</b>	<b>£000</b>	<b>£000</b>
<b>Financed from</b>			
Government support	(12,205)	(12,205)	0
Collection fund adjustment	(21)	(21)	0
Council tax	(7,639)	(7,639)	0
<b>General Reserves</b>			
Contribution to delayed projects reserve	(512)	246	(266)
Use of delayed projects reserve	512	(246)	266
General reserves	(1,005)	(650)	(355)
<b>Total use of reserves</b>	<b>(1,005)</b>	<b>(650)</b>	<b>(355)</b>
<b>Total</b>	<b>(20,870)</b>	<b>(20,515)</b>	<b>(355)</b>

3.3 The monitoring of both MTP savings and those associated with “Facing the Future” will commence from the second quarter of 2014/15; further the first 2014/15 Financial Dashboard will be distributed during July.

#### 4. CAPITAL MONITORING 2014/15

4.1 Only limited capital budget monitoring takes place in April and May due to the priority to complete the final accounts, the need to wait for adjustments for debtors and creditors to be dealt with in the new financial year and the difficulty of making assumptions on very limited evidence.



4.2 This first monitoring therefore concentrates on the impact of items that occurred last year plus a few significant ones that are already emerging in the current year and these are illustrated in the table below.

<b>CAPITAL BUDGETARY CONTROL 2014/15</b>	<b>Original Budget</b>	<b>Forecast outturn</b>	<b>Variation</b>
	<b>£000</b>	<b>£000</b>	<b>£000</b>
<b>Approved budget</b>	<b>4,691</b>	<b>4,691</b>	<b>0</b>
<b>Delayed spending from previous year</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>1,945</b>	<b>1,945</b>
<b>Variations</b>			
<b>Multi-Storey Car Park</b>		50	50
Changes to specification to increase the usability of the car park including installing LED lighting			
<b>CCTV Camera Replacements</b>		3	3
Amended monitor specification			
<b>Geographical Information System</b>		(7)	(7)
Slippage no longer required			
<b>Total variations</b>		<b>46</b>	<b>46</b>
<b>Forecast net spending</b>	<b>4,691</b>	<b>6,682</b>	<b>1,991</b>

	<b>£000</b>	<b>£000</b>	<b>£000</b>
<b>Financed from</b>			
Capital Receipts	(800)	(800)	0
Borrowing	(3,891)	(5,882)	1,991
<b>Total</b>	<b>(4,691)</b>	<b>(6,682)</b>	<b>(1,991)</b>

## 5. NEW HOMES BONUS

5.1 The government introduced the new homes bonus scheme (NHB) as a way of rewarding councils for residential development (or redevelopment) within their administrative boundaries. The grant received is based on actual increases in building to the previous September.

5.2 The Council has eight month's new-build information; based on this:

- "actual" build, at this point this is up 9% against the profiled target.
- "band D equivalent", at this point new build is up 40% against the profiled target; this would equate to a gain on 2015/16 NHB receipts of £168,000. However, the growth for for May was unusually high at 129 band D equivalent properties, compared to a mean for October to April of 52 band D properties per month, and may not be sustained.

Detailed analysis is shown in Annex A.

**6. LEGAL IMPLICATIONS**

6.1 No direct, material legal implications arise out of this report.

**7. RESOURCE IMPLICATIONS**

7.1 The resource implications are noted within this report.

**LIST OF APPENDICES INCLUDED**

Annex A

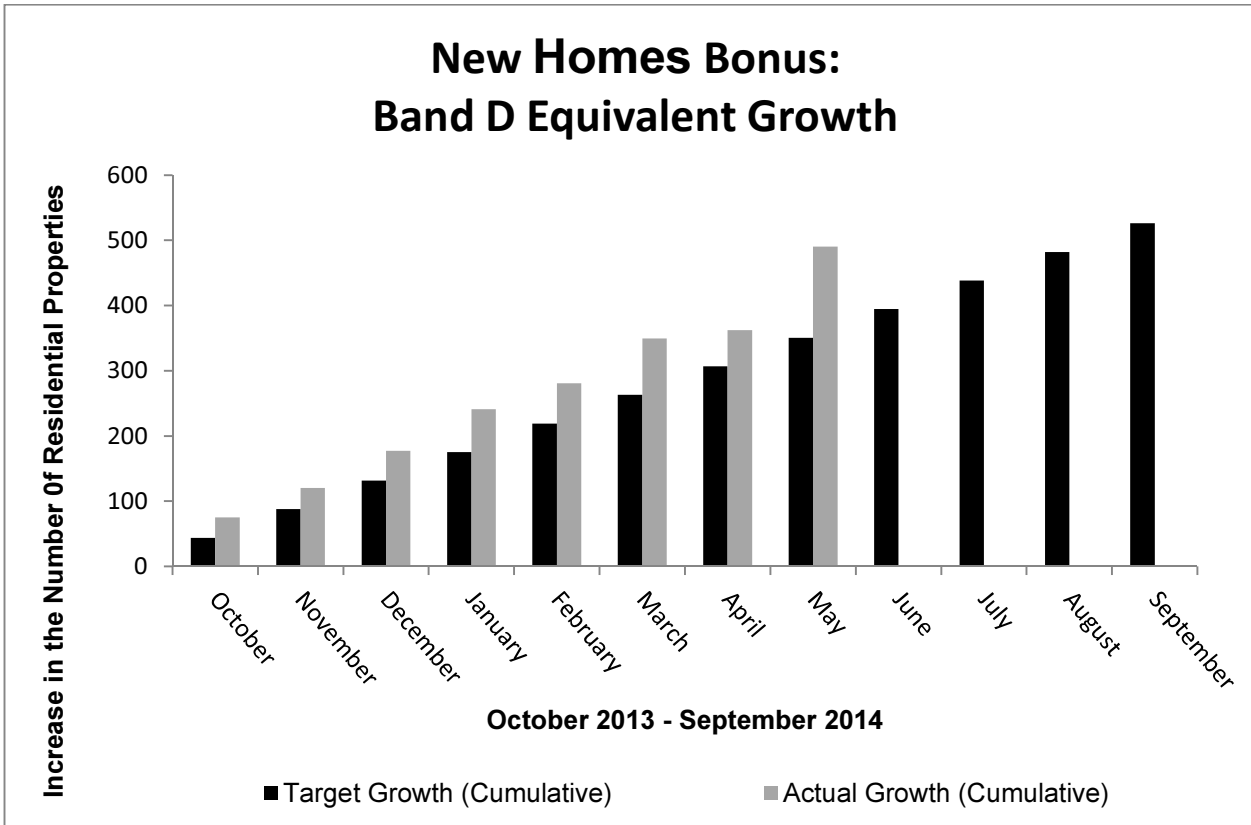
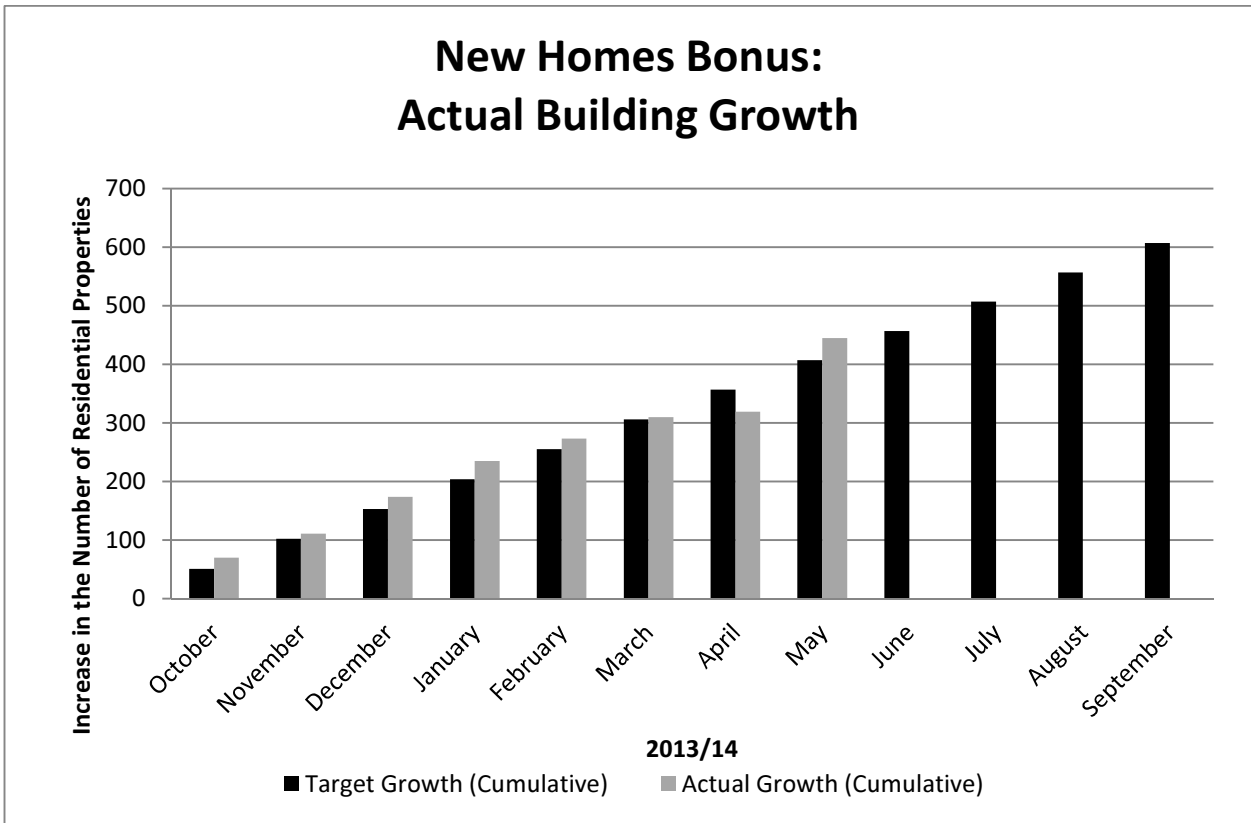
**BACKGROUND PAPERS**

Working papers in Financial Services

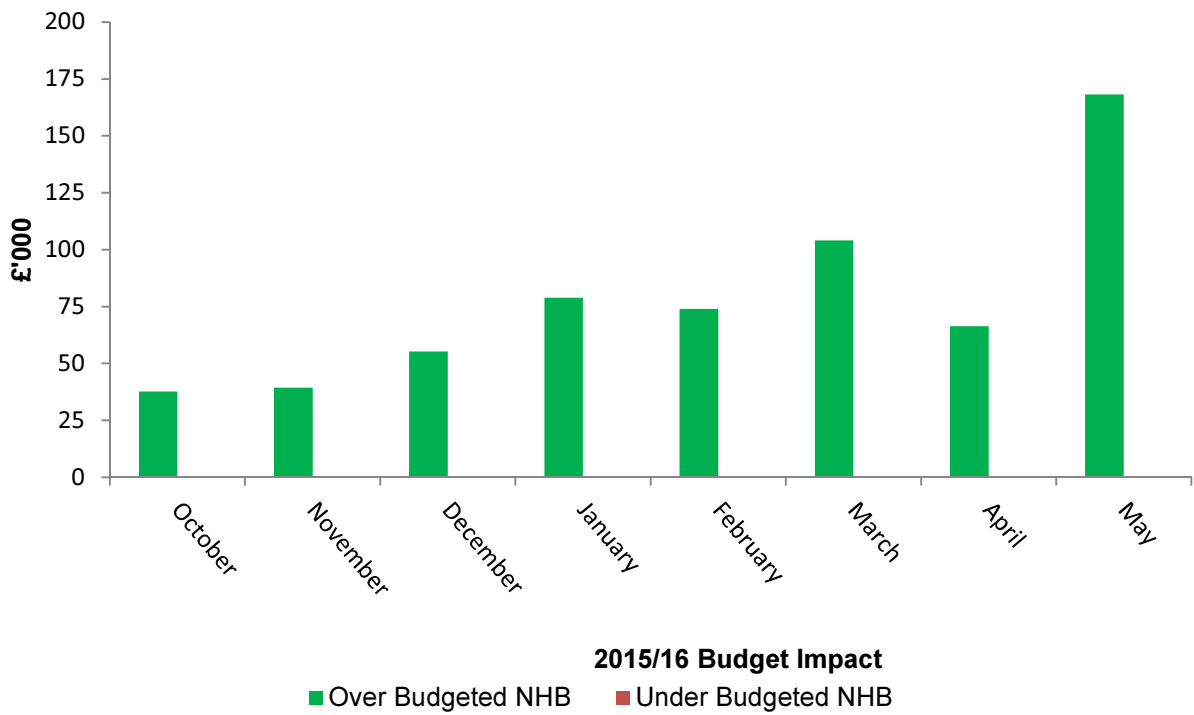
**CONTACT OFFICER**

Clive Mason, Head of Resources  
( 01480 388157

**ANNEX A: NEW HOMES BONUS DETAILED ANALYSIS**



## Cash Impact of NHB Growth



## HUNTINGDONSHIRE DISTRICT COUNCIL

<b>Title:</b>	<b>2013/14 Treasury Management Annual Report</b>
<b>Meeting/Date:</b>	<b>Cabinet</b> 17 July 2014
<b>Executive Portfolio:</b>	<b>Resources: Councillor J A Gray</b>
<b>Report by:</b>	<b>Head of Resources</b>
<b>Ward(s) affected:</b>	<b>All Wards</b>

---

### **Executive Summary:**

The Council's Treasury Management processes are underpinned by CIPFA's Code of Practice on Treasury Management, the Code requires the Council to produce an annual Treasury Management Strategy, for 2013/14 this was approved by Council on the 20th February 2013. The code of practice also recommends that members are informed of treasury management activity at least twice a year; the first report, the 2013/14 mid-year report was reported to Cabinet on the 12th December 2013 and this is the second of the two reports.

The Council will during the course of its normal business borrow and invest substantial sums of money, and as a consequence is exposed to financial risks including the loss of invested funds and the revenue effect of changing interest rates.

The identification and monitoring of these risks are central to the Council's Treasury Management Strategy. The main points of the Treasury Management Strategy are;

- Ensuring the Council has sufficient cash to meet its day to day obligations.
- Borrowing when necessary to fund capital expenditure, including borrowing in anticipation of need when rates are considered to be low.
- Investing surplus funds in a manner that balances low risk of default by the borrower with a fair rate of interest.

Throughout 2013/14 there has been a moderate reduction in the credit rating of financial institutions, in order to mitigate the risk from this the Council has mainly invested on a short-term basis, with significant use made of call accounts, where access to funds is instant. Borrowing has also been made mainly on a short-term basis.

The Council's banker, NatWest was downgraded in March 2014 and as a consequence was removed from the counterparty list. NatWest will not be used for investments but will continue to be used for operational banking requirements.

The average interest rate paid for borrowing was 2.94%, and the average interest rate received for investing was 2.29%.

### **Recommendation(s):**

- That Cabinet note the content of this report and annexes

## 1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 Council approves the Treasury Management Strategy for the coming year when it approves the budget and MTP each February. It also receives a mid-year report and an annual report after the end of the financial year. The Strategy is scrutinised by the Economic Well-being Panel.

1.2 The key points in the 2013/14 Strategy were:

- Ensuring the Council has sufficient cash to meet its day to day obligations.
- Borrowing when necessary to fund capital expenditure, including borrowing in anticipation of need when rates are considered to be low.
- Investing surplus funds in a manner that balances low risk of default by the borrower with a fair rate of interest.

## 2. ECONOMIC REVIEW

2.1 An economic review of the year provided by our Treasury Management advisors, Arlingclose, is attached as Annex A.

## 3. PERFORMANCE OF FUNDS

3.1 The following table summarises the treasury management transactions undertaken during the 2013/14 financial year and the details of the investments and loans held as at 31st March 2014 are shown in detail in Annex B.

3.2

	<b>Principal Amount £m</b>	<b>Interest Rate %</b>
<b>Investments</b>		
at 31 <sup>st</sup> March 2013	6.4	3.93
<b>less</b> matured in year	-188.0	
<b>plus</b> arranged in year	+185.1	
at 31 <sup>st</sup> March 2014	3.5	1.74
<b>Average Investments</b>	<b>10.6</b>	<b>2.29</b>
<b>Borrowing</b>		
at 31 <sup>st</sup> March 2013	16.0	2.56
<b>less</b> repaid in year	-31.6	
<b>plus</b> arranged in year	+33.0	
at 31 <sup>st</sup> March 2014	17.4	2.55
<b>Average Borrowing</b>	<b>14.4</b>	<b>2.94</b>

- 3.3 The average rate of interest on all investments was 2.29%, 1.96% above the 7-day benchmark rate of 0.33%. This good performance was due to £5m of the investments being locked into higher rates before the year started together with the use of liquidity accounts with major banks and building societies and Money Market Funds which gave the added safety of instant access together with interest rates in excess of the benchmark.
- 3.4 If only short-term cash flow investment activity is considered, the rate of interest on investments was 0.94%, which is still more than double the 7-day benchmark rate of 0.33%.
- 3.5 The Council's exposure to interest rate risk at the end of the year was:
- £11.4m long term borrowing from the PWLB, at a weighted average rate of 3.70%.
  - £6.0m short term borrowing for 1 month at a weighted average rate of 0.37%.

This gave an overall weighted average borrowing rate of 2.55%.

- 3.6 The actual net investment interest payable (after deduction of interest receivable on loans) was £182,000 which is £57,000 (24%) less than the original budget. This is mainly due to higher than expected reserves reducing the need to borrow externally.

#### **4. STRATEGY – BORROWING**

- 4.1 **Long-term borrowing.** The strategy allowed for 'must borrow' to finance that part of the capital programme that could not be met from internal funds. There was also a provision for 'may borrow' which allowed borrowing in anticipation of need, based on whether longer term rates seemed low compared with future likely levels. Long-term borrowing of £1.5m was obtained from PWLB to fund a loan to Huntingdonshire Regional College. Short-term borrowing rates were very low, as a result short-term borrowing and internal borrowing was used for funding.
- 4.2 **Short-term borrowing.** The Authority needed to borrow short-term during the year to manage its cash flow; it averaged £3.4m per day.

#### **5. STRATEGY - INVESTMENTS**

- 5.1 The Council's strategy for 2013/14 was based on all investments being managed in-house. The investments were of three types:
- time deposits,
  - liquidity (call) accounts (with banks with a high credit rating and the top 25 building societies by asset value), and
  - money market funds
- 5.2 In March 2014 the long-term rating of both the Royal Bank of Scotland and

NatWest Bank were downgraded to Baa1. This rating is below the Council's minimum investment credit criterion of AA-, as a consequence the bank was withdrawn from the Council's counterparty list for investment purposes. The NatWest will continue to be used for operational banking purposes (cash flow and day-to-day banking) but not for investments. All bank accounts held by NatWest are maintained at or near to zero.

- 5.3 The strategy includes limits on the size of investments with each organisation and country limits. The limits are shown in Annex C.
- 5.4 The strategy was reviewed during the course of the year and the mid-year report was reported to Cabinet on the 12th December 2013.

## **6. RISK MANAGEMENT**

- 6.1 The Council's primary objectives for the management of its investments are to give priority to the security and liquidity of its funds before seeking the best rate of return.
- 6.2 **Security** is managed by investing short-term with highly-rated banks, building societies and local authorities in the UK. The Authority received regular updates from its advisors, Arlingclose, sometimes daily, on changes to the credit rating of counterparties. This allowed the Council to amend its counterparty list and not invest where there is concern about the credit rating.
- 6.3 **Liquidity.** The majority of the Council's invested funds have been held in liquidity accounts or Money Market Funds, which have a rate of interest above base rate and provide instant access to funds.
- 6.4 Overall, liquidity was managed by producing daily cash flow forecasts that help set the limit on the duration of the investments in time deposits. The projections turned out to be cautious which sometimes resulted in funds being available before they were needed with any surplus being invested on a temporary basis.
- 6.5 **Return on investments.** Security and liquidity took precedence over the return on investments, which resulted in investments during 2013/14 generally being of short duration due to the benefit of good rates on liquidity and growing concerns over the credit rating of counterparties. With the Bank of England base rate being set at historically low levels, the rates of return available from the market are consequently also low.

## **7. COMPLIANCE WITH REGULATIONS AND CODES**

- 7.1 All the treasury management activity undertaken during the financial year complied with the approved strategy, the CIPFA Code of Practice, and relevant legislation.
- 7.2 The Code requires the Council to approve both Treasury Management and Prudential Indicators. Those for 2013/14 were approved at the Council meeting on 20<sup>th</sup> February 2013. Annex D shows the relevant indicators and the actual results.



## **8 CONCLUSION**

- 8.1 Considering that interest rates for the year remained exceptionally low, the Council's performance on the investment of funds significantly exceeds the benchmark and the budgeted investment interest.
- 8.2 In a year of uncertainty in the financial markets all of the Council's investments were repaid in full and on time.
- 8.3 The Authority has carried out its treasury management activities with due regard to minimising risk, and in accordance with legislation. During the year it reviewed its strategy in the light of external events in the markets.

## **9. COMMENTS OF OVERVIEW & SCRUTINY PANEL**

- 9.1 The Overview & Scrutiny Panel (Economic Well-Being) considered the Council's treasury management performance at their meeting on 12 June 2014. The Panel noted the report and associated annexes.

## **10 RECOMMENDATION**

- 10.1 It is recommended that Cabinet note this report.

## **BACKGROUND INFORMATION**

2013/14 cash management files and working papers  
Reports to the Cabinet and Treasury Management Advisory Group  
CIPFA Code on Treasury Management

## **CONTACT OFFICER**

Mr Clive Mason      Head of Resources      Tel. 01480 388157

## ECONOMIC REVIEW OF 2013/14

- 1.1** At the beginning of the 2013-14 financial year markets were concerned about lacklustre growth in the Eurozone, the UK and Japan. Lack of growth in the UK economy, the threat of a 'triple-dip' alongside falling real wages (i.e. after inflation) and the paucity of business investment were a concern for the Bank of England's Monetary Policy Committee. Only two major economies – the US and Germany – had growth above pre financial crisis levels, albeit these were still below trend. The Eurozone had navigated through a turbulent period for its disparate sovereigns and the likelihood of a near-term disorderly collapse had significantly diminished. The US government had just managed to avoid the fiscal cliff and a technical default in early 2013, only for the problem to re-emerge later in the year.
- 1.2** With new Governor Mark Carney at the helm, the Bank of England unveiled forward guidance in August pledging to not consider raising interest rates until the ILO unemployment rate fell below the 7% threshold. In the Bank's initial forecast, this level was only expected to be reached in 2016. Although the Bank stressed that this level was a threshold for consideration of rate increase rather an automatic trigger, markets began pricing in a much earlier rise than was warranted and, as a result, gilt yields rose aggressively.
- 1.3** The recovery in the UK surprised with strong economic activity and growth. Q4 2014 GDP showed year-on-year growth of 2.7%. Much of the improvement was down to the dominant service sector, and an increase in household consumption buoyed by the pick-up in housing transactions which were driven by higher consumer confidence, greater availability of credit and strengthening house prices which were partly boosted by government initiatives such as Help-to-Buy. However, business investment had yet to recover convincingly and the recovery was not accompanied by meaningful productivity growth. Worries of a housing bubble were tempered by evidence that net mortgage lending was up by only around 1% annually.
- 1.4** CPI fell from 2.8% in March 2013 to 1.7% in February 2014, the lowest rate since October 2009, helped largely by the easing commodity prices and discounting by retailers, reducing the pressure on the Bank to raise rates. Although the fall in unemployment (down from 7.8% in March 2013 to 7.2% in January 2014) was faster than the Bank of England or indeed many analysts had forecast, it hid a stubbornly high level of underemployment. Importantly, average earnings growth remained muted and real wage growth (i.e. after inflation) was negative. In February the Bank stepped back from forward guidance relying on a single indicator – the unemployment rate – to more complex measures which included spare capacity within the economy. The Bank also implied that when official interest rates were raised, the increases would be gradual – this helped underpin the 'low for longer' interest rate outlook despite the momentum in the economy.
- 1.5** The Office of Budget Responsibility's 2.7% forecast for economic growth in 2014 forecast a quicker fall in public borrowing over the next few years.

However, the Chancellor resisted the temptation to spend some of the proceeds of higher economic growth. In his 2013 Autumn Statement and the 2014 Budget, apart from the rise in the personal tax allowance and pension changes, there were no significant giveaways and the coalition's austerity measures remained on track.

- 1.6** The Federal Reserve's then Chairman Ben Bernanke's announcement in May that the Fed's quantitative easing (QE) programme may be 'tapered' caught markets by surprise. Investors began to factor in not just an end to QE but also rapid rises in interest rates. 'Tapering' (a slowing in the rate of QE) began in December 2013. By March 2014, asset purchases had been cut from \$75bn to \$55bn per month with expectation that QE would end by October 2014. This had particular implications for global markets which had hitherto benefited from, and got very accustomed to, the high levels of global liquidity afforded by QE. The impact went further than a rise in the dollar and higher US Treasury bond yields. Gilt yields also rose as a consequence and emerging markets, which had previously benefited as investors searched for yield through riskier asset, suffered large capital outflows in December and January.
- 1.7** With the Eurozone struggling to show sustainable growth, the European Central Bank cut main policy interest rates by 0.25% to 0.25% and the deposit rate to zero. Markets were disappointed by the lack of action by the ECB despite CPI inflation below 1% and a looming threat of deflation. Data pointed to an economic slowdown in China which, alongside a weakening property market and a highly leveraged shadow banking sector, could prove challenging for its authorities.
- 1.8** Russia's annexation of the Ukraine in March heightened geopolitical tensions and risk. The response from the West which began with sanctions against Russia which is the second largest gas producer in the world and which supplies nearly 30% of European natural gas needs and is also a significant supplier of crude oil – any major disruption to their supply would have serious ramifications for energy prices.
- 1.9** Gilt Yields and Money Market Rates: Gilt yields ended the year higher than the start in April. The peak in yields was during autumn 2013. The biggest increase was in 5-year gilt yields which increased by nearly 1.3% from 0.70% to 1.97%. 10-year gilt yields rose by nearly 1% ending the year at 2.73%. The increase was less pronounced for longer dated gilts; 20-year yields rose from 2.74% to 3.37% and 50-year yields rose from 3.23% to 3.44%. 3-month, 6-month and 12-month Libid rates remained at levels below 1% through the year.

## ANNEX B

## BORROWING AND INVESTMENTS AT 31 MARCH 2014

	Short-term Rating		Date Invested/ Borrowed	Amount		Interest Rate	Year of Maturity
	Fitch	Moody's		£m	£m		
<b>BORROWING</b>							
<b>Short-term</b>							
Portsmouth City Council	Not rated		14/03/14	4.000		0.40%	2014/15
South Lanarkshire Council	Not rated		18/03/14	2.000		0.32%	2014/15
					<b>6.000</b>		
<b>Long-term</b>							
PWLB			07/08/13	1.433		2.24%	2023/24
PWLB			19/12/08	5.000		3.91%	2057/58
PWLB			19/12/08	5.000		3.90%	2058/59
					<b>11.433</b>		
<b>Total Borrowing</b>					<b>17.433</b>		
<b>INVESTMENTS IN-HOUSE</b>							
<b>Investments</b>							
NatWest Liquidity	F1	P2		0.034m		0.50%	On-call
Cambridge Building Society	Not rated			0.100m		0.50%	On-call
Santander	F1	P1		1.150m		0.50%	On-call
Public Sector Deposit Fund	AAAmmf			0.650m		0.33%	On-call
					<b>1.934</b>		
<b>Loans</b>							
Alconbury Parish Council	Not rated			0.010m		0.50%	2016/17
Huntingdonshire Regional College	Not rated			1.436m		3.34%	2023/24
Huntingdon Gym	Not rated			0.072m		5.13%	2023/24
					<b>1.518</b>		
<b>Total Investments</b>					<b>3.452</b>		
<b>Net Borrowing</b>					<b>13.981</b>		

## IN-HOUSE FUND MANAGEMENT (IF NO FURTHER ADVANCE BORROWING)

<b>Duration of investments</b>	No investment shall be longer than 5 years. Maximum duration for a Building Society with no rating is 1 month.																
<b>Types of investments</b>	Fixed term Deposits Deposits at call, two or seven day notice Corporate bonds Money market funds UK Government bonds and Supranational Bank bonds Loans to organisations																
<b>Credit Ratings</b>	<p><b>Building Societies</b> All Building Societies with ratings of BBB or above. Building Societies with no ratings.</p> <p><b>Money Market Funds</b> AAA credit rating</p> <p><b>Local Authorities or UK Government</b> No rating required</p> <p><b>Non-Building Societies</b> Short term rating F1 by Fitch or equivalent. Long-term rating of AA- by Fitch or equivalent if the investment is longer than 1 year.</p> <p><b>Loans to Organisations</b> These will not require a specific credit rating but will be subject to individual approval by Cabinet.</p>																
<b>Maximum limits per counterparty (group), country or non-specified category</b>	<table> <tr> <td>F1+ or have a legal position that guarantees repayment for the period of the investment</td> <td>£5M</td> </tr> <tr> <td>F1</td> <td>£4M</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Building Society with assets over £2bn in top 25 (Currently 10)</td> <td>£5M</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Building Society with assets over £1bn if in top 25 (Currently 3)</td> <td>£4M</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Building Society with assets under £1bn in top 25</td> <td>£3M</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Liquidity (Call) Account with a credit rating of F1+ or with a legal position that guarantees repayment or a Building Society. BUT total invested with counterparty/group shall not exceed</td> <td>£5M</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>£8M</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Money market fund AAA Credit rating</td> <td>£4m</td> </tr> </table> <p><b>Limit for Non-specified investments</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- £10M in time deposits more than one year</li> <li>- £5M in corporate bonds</li> <li>- £10M in any other types.</li> <li>- £15M in total</li> </ul> <p><b>Country limits</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- UK - unlimited</li> <li>- £5M in a country outside the EU</li> <li>- £10M in a country within the EU (excluding UK)</li> <li>- £20M in EU countries combined (excluding UK)</li> <li>- Country of Domicile for Money Market Funds – unlimited, providing the fund is AAA.</li> </ul> <p>No investment will be made in country with a sovereign rating of less than AA.</p> <p>These limits will be applied when considering any new investment from 23 February 2012. Lower limits may be set during the course of the year or for later years to avoid too high a proportion of the Council's funds being with any counterparty.</p> <p><b>Loans to Organisations</b> No limit in value or period.</p>	F1+ or have a legal position that guarantees repayment for the period of the investment	£5M	F1	£4M	Building Society with assets over £2bn in top 25 (Currently 10)	£5M	Building Society with assets over £1bn if in top 25 (Currently 3)	£4M	Building Society with assets under £1bn in top 25	£3M	Liquidity (Call) Account with a credit rating of F1+ or with a legal position that guarantees repayment or a Building Society. BUT total invested with counterparty/group shall not exceed	£5M		£8M	Money market fund AAA Credit rating	£4m
F1+ or have a legal position that guarantees repayment for the period of the investment	£5M																
F1	£4M																
Building Society with assets over £2bn in top 25 (Currently 10)	£5M																
Building Society with assets over £1bn if in top 25 (Currently 3)	£4M																
Building Society with assets under £1bn in top 25	£3M																
Liquidity (Call) Account with a credit rating of F1+ or with a legal position that guarantees repayment or a Building Society. BUT total invested with counterparty/group shall not exceed	£5M																
	£8M																
Money market fund AAA Credit rating	£4m																
<b>Benchmark</b>	LGC 7 day rate																

**CIPFA Prudential Indicators for Capital Finance in Local Authorities  
Prudential Indications and Treasury Management Indications for 2013/14  
Comparison of actual results with limits**

**PRUDENTIAL MANAGEMENT INDICATORS**

**1. Actual and Estimated Capital Expenditure.**

	<b>2013/14 Estimate £000</b>	<b>2013/14 Actual £000</b>
<b>Gross</b>	<b>17.9</b>	<b>15.5</b>
<b>Net</b>	<b>8.7</b>	<b>10.1</b>

**2. The proportion of the budget financed from government grants and council tax that is spent on interest and the provision for debt repayment.**

<b>2013/14 Estimate</b>	<b>2013/14 Actual</b>
<b>7%</b>	<b>6%</b>

**3. The impact of schemes with capital expenditure on the level of council tax.**  
This item is only provided to demonstrate affordability at budget setting and has already been superseded by the equivalent figure in the 2014/15 Treasury Management Strategy indicators.

**4. The capital financing requirement.**

This represents the estimated need for the Authority to borrow to finance capital expenditure less the estimated provision for redemption of debt (the MRP) with no allowance for funding in advance.

<b>2013/14 Estimate £m</b>	<b>2013/14 Actual £m</b>
<b>35.6</b>	<b>34.7</b>

**5. Net borrowing and the capital financing requirement.**

Net external borrowing as at the 31<sup>st</sup> March 2014, was £14.0m, this is £20.7m less than the capital financing requirement. Thereby confirming that the council has not borrowed for revenue purposes other than in the short-term for cash flow purposes.

**6. The actual external long-term borrowing at 31 March 2014**

£11.4m

**7. Adoption of the CIPFA Code**

The Council has adopted the 2011 edition of the CIPFA Treasury Management Code of Practice.

**TREASURY MANAGEMENT INDICATORS**

**8. The authorised limit for external debt.**

This is the maximum limit for borrowing and is based on a worst-case scenario.

	<b>2013/14 Limit £m</b>	<b>2013/14 Actual £m</b>
Short-Term	20.0	6.0
Long Term assuming maximum borrowing in advance	48.0	11.4
Other long-term liabilities (leases)	5.0	0.5
<b>Total</b>	<b>73.0</b>	<b>20.0</b>

**9. The operational boundary for external debt.**

This reflects a less extreme position. Although the figure can be exceeded without further approval, it represents an early warning monitoring device to ensure that the authorised limit (above) is not exceeded.

	<b>2013/14 Limit £m</b>	<b>2013/14 Actual £m</b>
Short-Term	15.0	6.0
Long Term	48.0	11.4
Other long-term liabilities (leases)	5.0	0.5
<b>Total</b>	<b>68.0</b>	<b>20.0</b>

Both of these actual results reflect the fact that long term rates were not considered low enough to borrow in anticipation of need

**10. Exposure to investments with fixed interest and variable interest.**

These limits are given as a percentage of total investments. Investments of less than 12 months count as variable rate.

		Limits		Actual
		Max.	Min.	As at 31.3.14
<b>Borrowing:</b> longer than 1 year	Fixed	100%	75%	100%
	Variable	25%	0%	0%
<b>Investments:</b> longer than 1 year	Fixed	100%	100%	100%
	Variable	0%	0%	0%

**11. Borrowing Repayment Profile**

The proportion of 2013/14 borrowing that matured in successive periods.

Borrowing	Upper limit	Lower limit	Actual As at 31.3.14
Under 12 months	86%	0%	34%
12 months and within 24 months	86%	0%	0%
24 months and within 5 years	86%	0%	0%
5 years and within 10 years	86%	0%	0%
10 years and above	100%	14%	66%

**12. Investment Repayment Profile**

Limit on the value of investments that cannot be redeemed within 364 days.

	Limit £m	Actual £m
Limit on principal invested beyond year end (31 March 2014)	32.6	0



**Public**  
**Key Decision - No**

## HUNTINGDONSHIRE DISTRICT COUNCIL

**Title/Subject Matter:** Cambs Home Improvement Agency (CHIA) Shared Service Review & Disabled Facilities Grant Budget

**Meeting/Date:** Overview & Scrutiny Panel – 8 July 2014  
Cabinet – 17 July 2014

**Executive Portfolio:** Planning, Infrastructure, Housing and Growth

**Report by:** Housing Strategy Manager

**Ward(s) affected:** All

---

### **Executive Summary:**

This report provides Members with a progress review of the Home Improvement Agency (HIA) shared service following two years of operation. The report also considers the ongoing demand for Disabled Facilities Grants (DFGs) and the impact of the transfer of the Government DFG capital funding to the Better Care Fund.

The Cambs HIA shared service was developed during 2011/12 in partnership with Cambridge City and South Cambridgeshire District Councils. Cambs HIA went 'live' on 1<sup>st</sup> April 2012.

Cambs HIA is a partnership based shared service with staff being employed by Cambridge City Council, the main office located within South Cambridgeshire's offices in Cambourne (with hot desks at other locations) and IT systems and support provided by this Council.

The shared service HIA has been successful in meeting its aims and objectives within two years with potential to achieve further efficiencies both internally and externally into the future.

The opportunity to broaden the shared service to include the other districts within Cambridgeshire provides an opportunity to deliver further efficiencies and benefits for commissioners and customers.

The current three-year Agreement runs out in March 2015. In order to allow time to work up the proposals to deliver a countywide shared service an extension to the current Agreement is required.

Analysis of demand and costs would suggest that the Council's MTP budget for DFG seems appropriate to manage the current demand placed upon it.

Further work will be done over the summer to monitor OT referrals and work flow, and predict future trends. This will feed into the Council's MTP process in September 2014.

**Recommendation(s):**

It is recommended that:

Overview & Scrutiny (Social Well Being) comment on and note this report and recommend that Cabinet:

- Grant permission for officers to work up an Outline Business Case for the expansion to a County-wide service, with final agreement being subject to a Detailed Business Case to go before Members at a later date.
- Endorse the extension of the current Shared Service Agreement by a further twelve months to 31 March 2016.
- Request a further report be brought to Members after three years of Cambs HIA operation.

## **1. WHAT IS THIS REPORT ABOUT/PURPOSE?**

- 1.1 This report provides Members with a progress review of the Cambs Home Improvement Agency (CHIA) shared service following two years of operation. The report also considers the impact of the Better Care Fund and the ongoing demand for Disabled Facilities Grants (DFGs).

## **2. WHY IS THIS REPORT NECESSARY/BACKGROUND**

- 2.1 Members have requested an annual report on performance of the shared service home improvement agency.
- 2.2 The Cambs HIA shared service was developed during 2011/12 in partnership with Cambridge City and South Cambridgeshire District Councils, Cambs HIA went 'live' on 1<sup>st</sup> April 2012.
- 2.3 Cambs HIA is a partnership based shared service with staff being employed by Cambridge City Council, the main office located within South Cambridgeshire's offices in Cambourne (with hot desks at other locations) and IT systems and support provided by this Council.
- 2.4 One of the main aims of the Cambs HIA is to help people live independently by helping them to access DFGs. The Housing Grants, Construction and Regeneration Act 1996 sets out the Council's duties to provide DFGs. The Council must award a DFG for work to achieve one or more of a set of purposes defined by statute. DFGs are awarded on the recommendation of an Occupational Therapist (OT) and fund aids and adaptations like ramps, stair lifts and level access showers. The maximum DFG is £30k and DFGs for adults are subject to a means test. DFGs for children are not means tested. The Council must be satisfied that a DFG is necessary and appropriate and that to carry it out is reasonable and practicable. At the current time, the responsibility for validating and approving DFGs sits with the Strategic Housing Service at this Council.
- 2.5 DFGs form part of a wider strategic approach to helping improve the health and wellbeing of people in Huntingdonshire. Along with other low level interventions, DFGs can enable elderly and disabled people to live independently and help to avoid costly emergency hospital admissions and inappropriate and expensive care placements. DFGs are therefore a 'preventative' service and help to implement the aims of the countywide Health and Well Being Strategy.
- 2.6 During 2013/14 the drive from Central Government has been towards the introduction of the Care Bill. As part of this, the Government has established the Better Care Fund (BCF). This is a pooled Health and Adult Social Care budget. All of the funding that is due to be pooled together is currently allocated to services across the health and social care systems. The Government's contribution to DFG capital funding is also being pooled within this new BCF 'pot'. For the time being, the Government DFG subsidy is ring-fenced for DFG expenditure. The aim of the BCF is to help transform services to enable a number of National outcomes to be achieved. These include 7 day services to support hospital discharge, more effective preventative services, better sharing of information between agencies, joint assessments etc. The BCF for Cambridgeshire is £37.7m and a joint strategy is being developed for how the money will be allocated in the future, and how the national outcomes will be achieved. The shared HIA is clearly well placed to support delivery of

these aims and there may be opportunity for further development of the HIA service given the preventative outcomes they help to deliver.

### **3. CAMBS HIA - REVIEW AFTER TWO YEARS OF OPERATION**

3.1 Following a slow start to the shared service in 2012/13 due to the complexities of the service and the challenge of bringing together three very different operational teams, service delivery has improved significantly over year two.

3.2 When the HIA was formed, a number of key objectives were agreed. Progress on each of these is set out below:

#### **Deliver cost savings over time for both district and county commissioners.**

3.3 The savings identified for the Council of moving to a shared service were anticipated to be minimal, if any, in the first two years. The Council had historically revenue funded the in house HIA at levels ranging from £59k in 2006/07 to £73k in 2010/11. The Cambs HIA's Year 1 (2012/13) budget resulted in a deficit of £71k, and a contribution of £35k from HDC was made in line with the cost sharing agreement, as reported to this Panel in July 2013.

3.4 It was predicted that at the end of Year 2 the service would break even or make a small surplus. Year-end figures showed that the shared service made a small surplus of £8k. However agreement was obtained for this amount to be rolled forward into 2014/15 in order to cover unforeseen costs following the HDC IT upgrade.

3.5 Cambridgeshire County Council has continued to revenue grant fund the shared service in addition to the Fenland and East Cambs services and advocates the evolution towards a County-wide service over the next two years. This would provide additional scope to increase economies of scale and allow funding to be more effectively targeted towards relative need across the County.

3.6 The anticipated cost savings for the district council have been met with expected savings for County commissioners to be delivered through further expansion to a Countywide shared service in future years.

#### **Improve operational resilience and opportunities for cross boundary working.**

3.7 Operational resilience has improved during Year 2 with an additional part-time Surveyor being deployed in Huntingdonshire to deal with the backlog of cases from Year 1. This has been particularly effective and some 238 DFGs were completed in 2013/14 against 189 in 2012/13. The caseload at 31<sup>st</sup> March 2013 was 246 and this came down to 189 by 31<sup>st</sup> March 2014.

3.8 Discussions have been held between County Council Commissioners and Fenland and East Cambridgeshire Councils about whether or not they would wish to join the shared service. The benefits to Huntingdonshire from further expansion of the CHIA into Fenland and/or East Cambridgeshire are further improvements in efficiency and a more robust service. As one of the primary revenue funders of the service the County Council are very keen to progress with this to achieve better value for money. This will need further exploration over the coming year.

- 3.9 The objective to improve resilience and work across boundaries has been met through the development of the CHIA and there are further opportunities to increase this through development of a County-wide service over time.

**Provide a platform for improved performance and efficiency over time.**

- 3.10 The CHIA Management Board is keen to develop closer working with both district colleagues and partners in Health and Adult Social Care. These include proposals for closer working with OTs and other services i.e. Handyperson services, hospital discharge teams, etc.
- 3.11 The scope for broadening the service across East Cambridgeshire and Fenland provides significant opportunities for improved future efficiency.
- 3.12 CHIA is currently exploring the possibility of agreeing with the district councils a 'fast-track' grant system for smaller works under a set financial limit (e.g. £6,000). This would enable smaller types of adaptation i.e. stair lifts, level access showers, to be completed outside of the time consuming DFG process and generally make more routine adaptations available more quickly to vulnerable households.
- 3.13 The current three-year Shared Service HIA Agreement runs out in March 2015. This agreement requires review and further development if it is to include potentially two other local authority HIA services in future. The Agreement provides for extension year on year with the agreement of all parties and will require at least one further year extension in order to prepare an outline business case for a wider shared service across Cambridgeshire.
- 3.14 The platform for improved performance and efficiency has therefore been established.

**4. COMMENTS OF OVERVIEW & SCRUTINY PANEL (SOCIAL WELL-BEING)**

- 4.1 The Overview and Scrutiny Panel (Social Well-Being) endorses the recommendations but has challenged the risks associated with the development of a County-wide shared service if all Cambridgeshire authorities do not sign up to the proposals; specifically the potential withdrawal of revenue funding from the County Council. Occupational Therapy waiting times for Priority 1 and Priority 2 cases have improved but delays with Priority 3 cases continue with individuals waiting as long as 25 weeks in some cases. It is thought that the possible introduction of a "fast track" grant system for smaller works will assist with reducing these delays.
- 4.2 The Panel welcomes the report being produced by the Housing Strategy Manager on the lessons learnt from the establishment of the Cambridgeshire Home Improvement Agency shared service. This will inform the Council of matters to be aware of as future shared service proposals emerge.
- 4.3 The Panel has also discussed the tender process for contractors undertaking works on behalf of the Home Improvement Agency. There is a need to test the market to determine whether smaller local firms are able to undertake such works with a view to reducing costs and enabling the Disabled Facilities Grant budget to go further.

**5. KEY IMPACTS/RISKS / HOW WILL THEY BE ADDRESSED?**

5.1 The inclusion of the Government element of DFG capital (c.£0.4m) within the Better Care Fund (BCF) from 2015/16 provides an element of risk, as while current Government plans are to stipulate that DFG capital must be cascaded to housing authorities, this may change over time. This will be monitored by officers.

5.2 With regard to the development of a Countywide Home Improvement Agency there is a risk that not all Councils will sign up to this. There follows then a risk that County Council revenue funding may be withdrawn, or reduced as a result as they support a County-wide approach.

## **6. WHAT ACTIONS WILL BE TAKEN/TIMETABLE FOR IMPLEMENTATION**

6.1 The Agreement will be renewed for one further year initially.

6.2 Officers will work with the CHIA Manager on an outline business case which will be subject to Member endorsement in future. It is hoped that this would be developed in time for the 2015 Review report.

## **7. LINK TO THE CORPORATE PLAN**

7.1 This proposal links with the following strategic themes and outcomes:

### **Working with our communities**

- Improve health and wellbeing

### **Ensuring we are a customer focussed and service led council**

- Becoming more business like and efficient in the way we deliver services
- Ensure customer engagement drives service priorities and improvement

## **8. CONSULTATION**

8.1 Customer satisfaction remains high with the Council carrying out quarterly satisfaction surveys. These are monitored and reported in the CHIA Annual Report.

## **9. LEGAL IMPLICATIONS**

9.1 The Head of Legal & Democratic Services has confirmed that the Shared Service Agreement can be extended for a further year by formal minute and letter.

9.2 Any expansion of the service will require a fresh Legal Agreement to be developed by all partners.

## **10. RESOURCE IMPLICATIONS**

### **10.1 REVIEW OF DEMAND FOR CAPITAL GRANT FOR DFGs**

10.1.1 Demand for DFG remains strong in Huntingdonshire for a number of reasons, including people's aspirations to live at home for longer, an increase in DFGs for children, increased longevity, and an overall increase in the number of older people in the district. The Office for National Statistics projections show that the proportion of people aged over 65 in the district is predicted to increase from 16% of our population in 2011 (27,700 people) to 21% of our population by 2021 (38,300 people). Therefore long term demand for DFG and other services that support older people, is expected to continue to grow.

10.1.2 A review modelling demand for DFG has been carried out and it is estimated that 30 new OT referrals will be received each month. Approximately 70% of these proceed to a DFG. The average DFG costs £7.2k. Therefore the need for DFG in an average year is estimated to be £1,800k. Obviously if any of the variables stated above change, then demand for DFG could increase or decrease accordingly.

10.1.3 When the new HIA was formed it took time to get up to full operational capacity. As a result, a backlog of cases built up in year 1, although as shown earlier this was dealt with through additional resource in 2013/14 and caseloads are now back to more usual levels. Referrals from the Occupational Therapy Department remain stable at around 30 per month.

10.1.4 Service delivery rates over recent years, plus a prediction for this year is as follows:

	2011/12	2012/13	2013/14	2014/15 Predicted DFGs generated in year
No. DFGs completed	261	189	238	250
Total spend on DFGs	£1.6m	£1.2m	£1.7m	£1.8m

10.1.5 The DFG budget, in the Council's MTP is as follows:

	2014/15 £m	2015/16 £m	2016/17 £m
Assumption on contribution from central Government	0.400	0.400	0.400
HDC contribution	1.450	1.250	1.250
Total DFG budget	1.850	1.650	1.650

10.1.6 In 2015/16 the MTP reduces by £200k. However because the Government element of the DFG capital will come through the BCF from 2015/16, it is expected (from early notifications) that the amount of Government support for DFGs in Huntingdonshire will increase by c. £100k. This is not included in the MTP until confirmed, but this, in addition to the further efficiencies through procurement of works should provide a sufficient budget for the demand to be met.

## 11. OTHER IMPLICATIONS

11.1 None

## **12 REASONS FOR THE RECOMMENDED DECISIONS**

- 12.1 The shared service CHIA has been successful in meeting its aims and objectives within two years, with potential to achieve further efficiencies both internally and externally into the future.
- 12.2 The opportunity to broaden the shared service to include the other districts within Cambridgeshire provides an opportunity to deliver further efficiencies and benefits for commissioners and customers.
- 12.3 The current three-year Agreement runs out in March 2015. In order to allow time to work up the proposals to deliver a countywide shared service an extension to the current Agreement is required.
- 12.4 Analysis of demand and costs would suggest that the Council's MTP budget for DFG is appropriate to manage the current demand placed upon it.
- 12.5 Further work will be done over the summer to monitor OT referrals and work flow, and predict future trends. This will feed into the Council's MTP process in September 2014.

### **BACKGROUND PAPERS**

- Overview & Scrutiny Panel Report 4 June 2013 – Shared HIA Service Review and DFG budget.
- The Housing, Grants, Construction and Regeneration Act 1996
- Cambridgeshire Health and Well Being Strategy 2012-17  
<http://www.cambridgeshire.gov.uk/NR/ronlyres/15D48C47-A6F7-4C35-B540-F0FA5168D988/0/CambridgeshireHealthWellbeingStrategy20122017.pdf>
- Cambridgeshire Better Care Fund Plan  
<http://www2.cambridgeshire.gov.uk/CommitteeMinutes/Committees/Meeting.aspx?meetingID=781>
- Developing Plans for the Better Care Fund – NHS England Planning Guidance  
<http://www.local.gov.uk/documents/10180/12193/Developing+plans+for+better+care+fund+guidance.pdf/734c155e-7820-4761-976a-6c56053c0e78>

### **CONTACT OFFICER**

Trish Reed, Housing Strategy Manager  
Jo Emmerton, Lead Housing Strategy Manager  
Tel No: 01480 388203



Public \*  
Key Decision - Yes

## HUNTINGDONSHIRE DISTRICT COUNCIL

**Title/Subject Matter:** CAMBRIDGESHIRE LONG TERM TRANSPORT  
STRATEGY & LOCAL TRANSPORT PLAN 3 REFRESH

**Meeting/Date:** O&S Environmental Well-Being – 15<sup>th</sup> July 2014  
CABINET – 17<sup>th</sup> July 2014

**Executive Portfolio:** Strategic Planning & Housing

**Report by:** Head of Development

**Ward(s) affected:** All

---

### Executive Summary:

This report outlines the work that is on-going in developing a Long Term Transport Strategy for Cambridgeshire, including Huntingdonshire, based on providing an integrated network that will support the projected growth across the County.

The work to date includes assumptions that a new A14 will be delivered, as well as major improvements to the A428 between Caxton Gibbet and the A1 Black Cat.

Localised work is indicating that growth in Huntingdon will put the A141 under particular strain as well as routes into and out of St. Ives, even with a new A14 built. A possible new A141 will be considered as well as a new link road between Hartford and Godmanchester.

In addition to road-based options, the plan seeks to build on the success of the Guided Busway by providing a high quality dedicated public transport corridor between St. Ives and Peterborough by serving planned developments at RAF Wyton and Alconbury Weald and linked to a possible new rail station on the East Coast Main Line at Alconbury Weald. Linkage would also be provided to Huntingdon. A further corridor is considered appropriate between St. Neots and Cambridge.

The refresh of the Local Transport Plan 3 (LTP3) will look to ensure that all strategies are up to date with a major update to the Implementation Plan to ensure that this properly reflects those schemes delivered since the Plan was first approved in 2011.

### Recommendation(s):

Recommended that Cabinet agrees and notes the current progress with the development of both the Cambridgeshire Long Term Transport Strategy and the refresh of Local Transport Plan 3

This page is intentionally left blank

## **1. WHAT IS THIS REPORT ABOUT/PURPOSE?**

- 1.1 The purpose of this report is to note progress on developing a Draft Long Term Transport Strategy (LTTS) for Cambridgeshire as well as an update on the Local Transport Plan (LTP3), both of which have been subject to public consultation until 11<sup>th</sup> July 2014.
- 1.2 The District Council is a partner to this process and is required to respond to this current consultation.

## **2. WHY IS THIS REPORT NECESSARY/BACKGROUND**

- 2.1 The draft LTTS seeks to provide an integrated network enabling efficient and reliable travel across Cambridgeshire and beyond. As well as improvements to all travel modes, particularly rail, bus, walking & cycling, a key ambition is to improve accessibility on the strategic road network by addressing key constraints such as the A14 and A428 and other key routes across the County.
- 2.2 The Strategy has been developed to support projected growth in all emerging Local Plans, including Huntingdonshire, and includes Action Plans for setting out key infrastructure requirements. These include schemes already planned for delivery, such as the A14, those that support major development, additional schemes not currently programmed but needed to provide new capacity, as well as further schemes that may be required to support longer-term growth. Those for Huntingdonshire are shown at Annex A.
- 2.3 The LTTS does recognise that major investment will be needed and that not all challenges can be addressed at the same time so further work will be needed over time to develop options and a package of funding opportunities.

## **3. OPTIONS CONSIDERED/ANALYSIS**

- 3.1 The modelling undertaken to date includes the assumption that a new A14 will be delivered and that the A428 will be dualled between Caxton Gibbet and the A1 Black Cat, the latter which is emerging as a capacity constraint in the Highways Agency 'Route Based Strategy' work that is due to report to Government in March 2015.
- 3.2 The more localised work is demonstrating that with planned growth and the delivery of work on the A1 and A428, that key routes, such as the A141 Huntingdon Northern By-Pass and routes in and out of St. Ives will still be under serious strain. A new A141 is emerging as a potential solution for Huntingdon and around St. Ives, the position is even more challenging given the limited capacity on the network, with a new link road between Hartford Road and Godmanchester indicated, the latter providing significant environmental constraints. Those proposals currently being suggested are those that best perform in terms of supporting growth, enhancing accessibility and making the best use of capacity on the existing and planned network.
- 3.3 Details of these are shown at Annex A, although it is important to stress that at this stage, these are simply potential options for public consultation and no undue weight should be placed on any of these at this stage. As the options are developed further, there will need to be a series of detailed project design processes put in place.

3.4 As well as the road-based options, Members will also note that significant support has emerged from the modelling work to develop public transport solutions between St. Neots and Cambridge and between St. Ives and Peterborough, the latter via RAF Wyton, Huntingdon and Alconbury Weald, including a possible new rail station on the East Coast Main Line (ECML). Current work is suggesting that all these suggestions would build on the success of the Guided Busway by providing high quality segregated networks in order to deliver a real step-change in public transport delivery.

3.5 The aim of the package is to manage predicted traffic growth whilst facilitating growth. More detailed work will be needed to assess the impacts and benefits and the feedback via the public consultation will help to inform that process.

#### **4. LOCAL TRANSPORT PLAN 3 (LTP3)**

4.1 LTP3 was adopted in 2011 for the period up to 2026 and is a County Council statutory plan which sets the policy framework for transport across Cambridgeshire. Since it was adopted, all County-wide Planning authorities have made much progress in reviewing or rolling forward their Local Plans.

4.2 Growth plans across the County are ambitious with allocations of around 98,000 new homes to 2031/6 and partners are working together to ensure an integrated approach to plan for growth in developing the LTTS. At the same time as work progresses on the development of the LTTS, it is planned to 'refresh' LTP3 to ensure that it takes account of recent changes. This will include the inclusion of the new Transport Strategy for Cambridge & South Cambridgeshire and to review and update the Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA), Habitats Regulation Assessment (HRA) and Community Impact Assessment (CIA) in order to ensure continued compliance with regulations.

4.3 This work is not intended to amend the policy basis of LTP3 but rather update the evidence base and to reflect current environmental issues, the current funding situation, delivery and progress of schemes, as well as issues arising from the growth agenda. The Implementation Plan is now out of date and the opportunity will be taken to update this also.

#### **5. COMMENTS OF OVERVIEW & SCRUTINY PANEL**

*(Include, if available. If not, make reference to them being circulated separately)*

#### **6. KEY IMPACTS/RISKS? HOW WILL THEY BE ADDRESSED?**

6.1 The Council is a key partner to the emerging LTTS and the existing LTP3 and it is vital that we remain such to ensure that the right solutions emerge for Huntingdonshire, whilst protecting and mitigating any impacts that arise.

#### **7. WHAT ACTIONS WILL BE TAKEN/TIMETABLE FOR IMPLEMENTATION**

7.1 The Council will continue to act as a key partner in the development of the LTTS and a further report will be submitted to Cabinet in due course.

#### **8. LINK TO THE CORPORATE PLAN**

8.1 Our Corporate Plan contains 4 Strategic Themes;

- A Strong Local Economy
- Enable Sustainable Growth
- Working with our Communities
- A Customer Focused and Service Led Council

8.2 The first three themes outlined above are key drivers of both the LTTS and LTP3 and by adopting the priorities of the fourth in our work on both strategies, it will ensure that both fully align with the HDC Corporate Plan 2014-2016.

8.3 The LTTS is a key element of the evidence base for the emerging Local Plan to 2036 and is a demonstration of an ongoing partnership between HDC and CCC to deliver co-ordinated growth.

## **9. CONSULTATION**

9.1 Working with partners, the County Council has been undertaking public consultation on both strategies across Huntingdonshire and the rest of Cambridgeshire. Once the results of that work has been analysed, further reports will be submitted to Cabinet.

## **10. LEGAL IMPLICATIONS**

*(Comments from the Head of Legal & Democratic Services)*

10.1 There are no direct legal implications for the Council.

## **11. RESOURCE IMPLICATIONS**

*(Comments from the Assistant Director, Finance & Resources)*

11.1 At the present time, no direct implications have been identified although it is expected that the Council will be a partner to emerging funding initiatives, particularly working with partners and the Local Enterprise Partnership (LEP's). This will be monitored closely, including work that is undertaken in terms of bidding processes to Central Government and the eventual delivery and timescales of planned schemes as outlined within the strategy.

## **12. OTHER IMPLICATIONS**

*(Equalities, environment, ICT, etc)*

12.1 As part of this work, the County Council plan to refresh the SEA, HRA and the CIA as outlined in to ensure that both the LTTS and LTP3 fully comply with current guidance as outlined in Sec. 4.2 above.

## **13 REASONS FOR THE RECOMMENDED DECISIONS**

*(Summary leading to the Recommendations)*

13.1 This Council has been an active participant in the work of the LTP3 since its first approval in 2011, including the delivery of its aims and objectives. Likewise, in order to ensure that planned growth is properly planned and integrated with the emerging LTTS, we have been working closely with the County Council to ensure the proposals now emerging are properly aligned

## **14. LIST OF APPENDICES INCLUDED**

Annex A – Proposed LTTS Schemes

## **BACKGROUND PAPERS**

Long Term Transport Strategy for Cambridgeshire  
Cambridgeshire LTP3  
HDC Corporate Plan 2014-2016  
Highways Agency (Draft) Route Based Strategies

## **CONTACT OFFICER**

Stuart Bell – Transport Team Leader  
01480 388387

Figure 4.1. Schemes that are planned for public sector delivery in the period from 2014 to 2021.

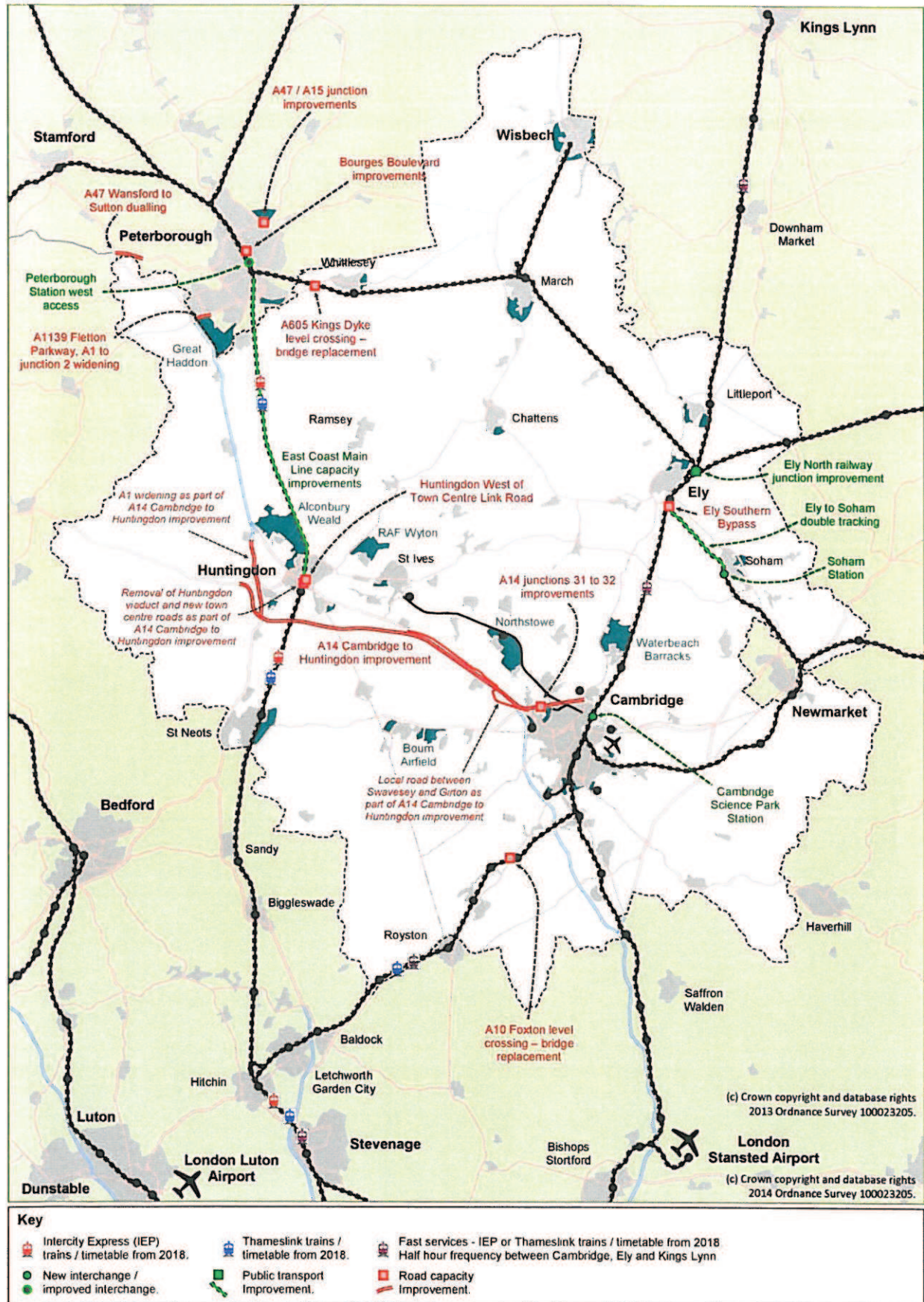


Figure 4.9. Huntingdon and St Ives Inset

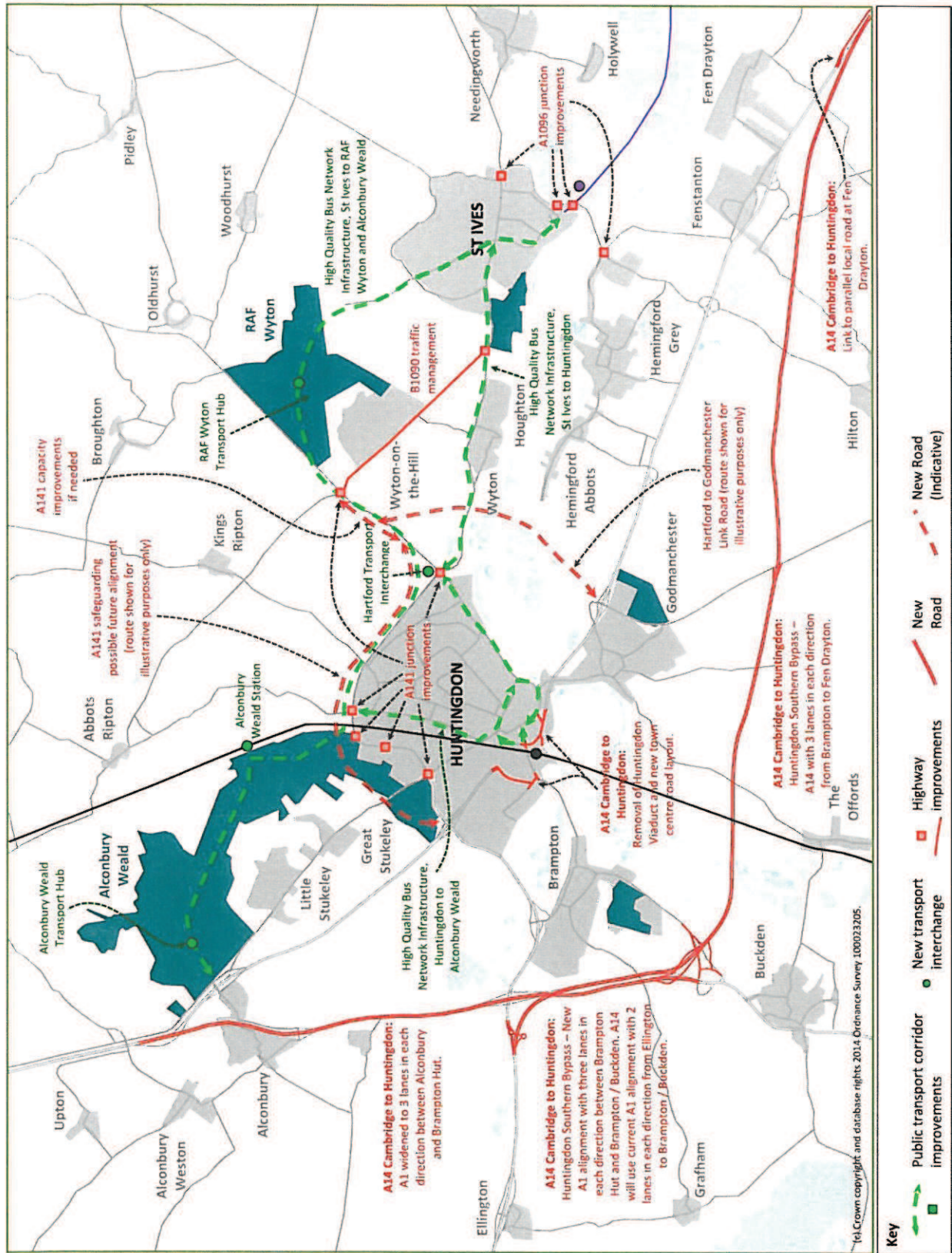




Figure 4.10. St Neots and Cambourne to Cambridge corridor inset

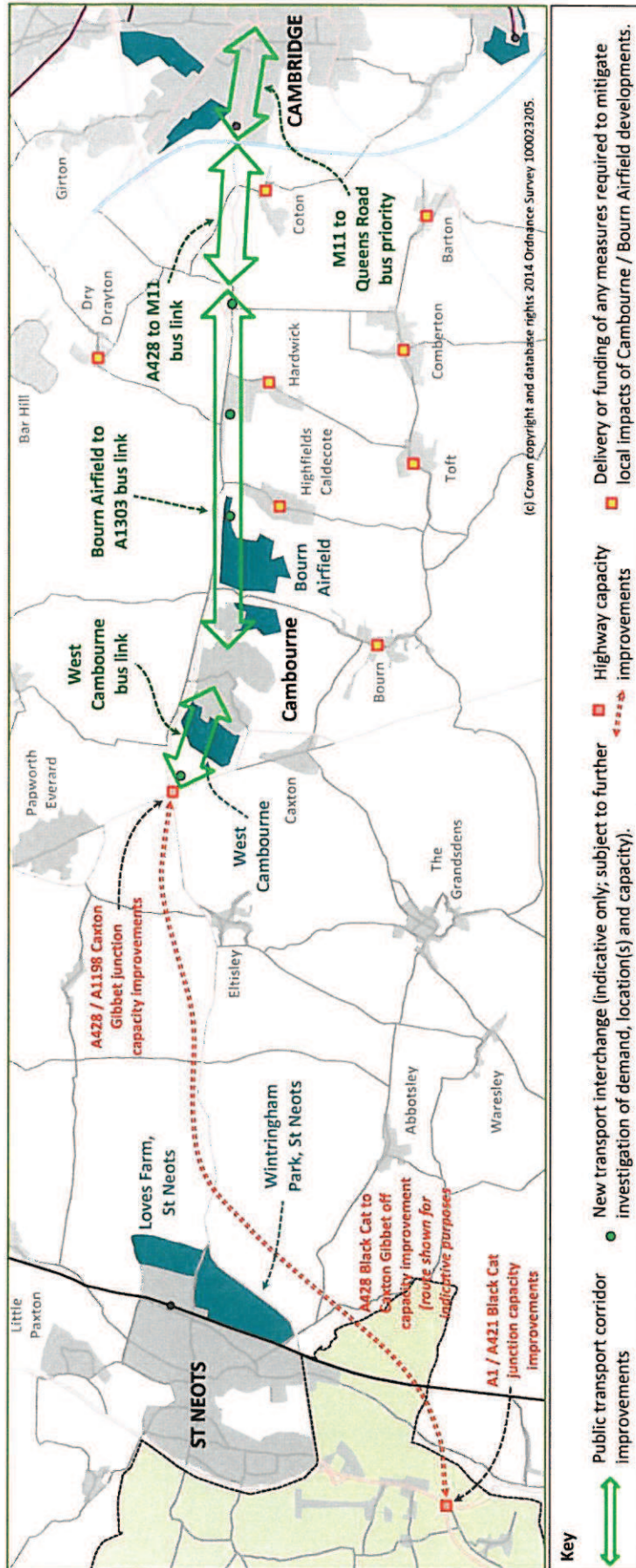
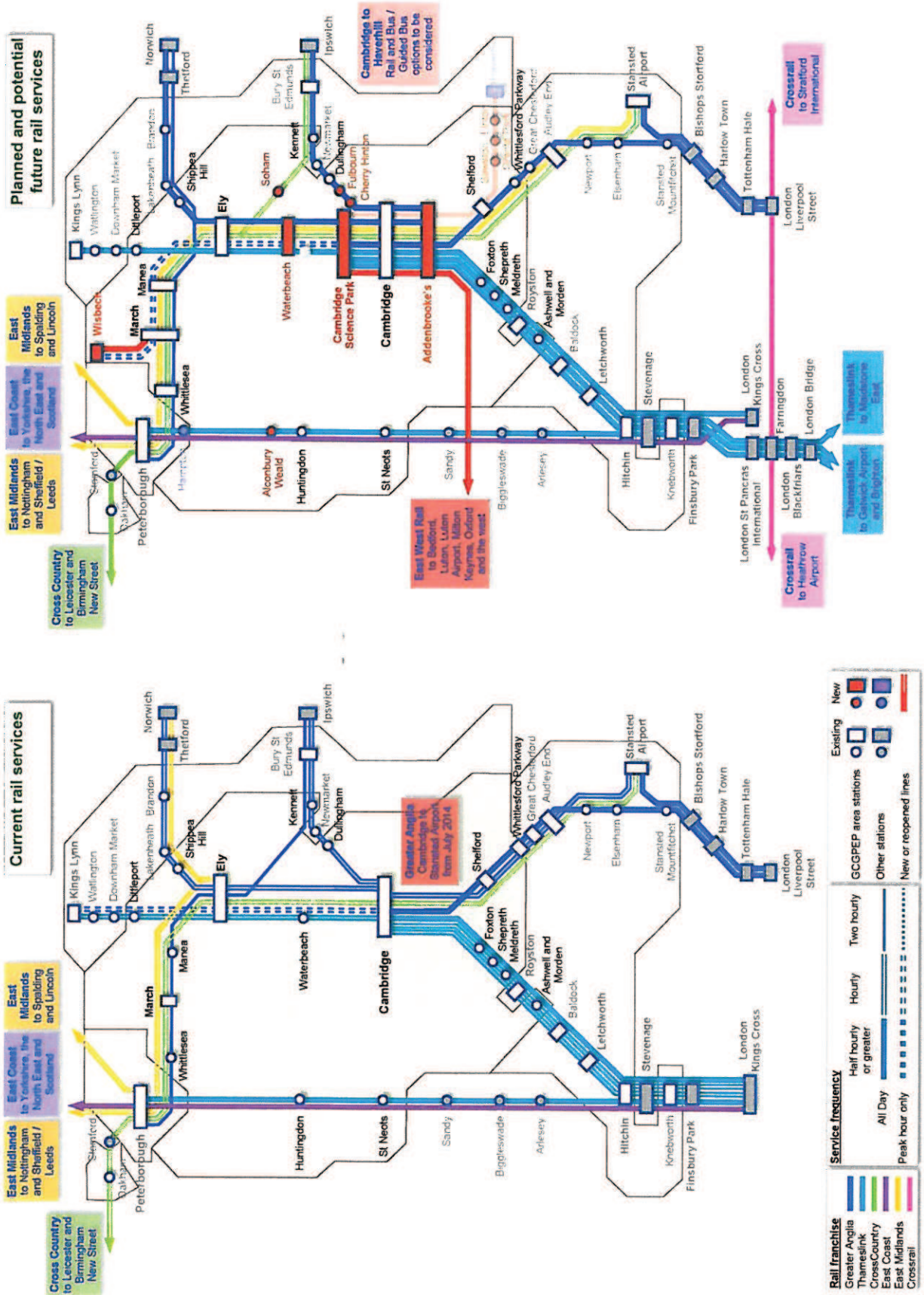


Figure 4.16. Rail service improvements in Cambridgeshire and the GCGPEP area



**Public**  
**Key Decision - Yes**

## HUNTINGDONSHIRE DISTRICT COUNCIL

**Title/Subject Matter:** DRAFT HUNTINGDON & GODMANCHESTER MARKET TOWN TRANSPORT STRATEGY

**Meeting/Date:** O&S Environmental Well-Being – 15<sup>th</sup> July 2014  
CABINET – 17<sup>th</sup> July 2014

**Executive Portfolio:** Strategic Planning & Housing

**Report by:** Head of Development

**Ward(s) affected:** Huntingdon, Godmanchester, Alconbury & The Stukeleys, Brampton

---

### **Executive Summary:**

This report outlines the work undertaken in developing a new Market Town Transport strategy for Huntingdon & Godmanchester (MTTS).

The work sets out a transport vision for Huntingdon & Godmanchester and contains an action plan of measures up to 2016 and will replace the existing strategy that was first approved in 2003.

The strategy area covers all Huntingdon wards and Godmanchester as well as the parishes at Alconbury & The Stukeleys and Brampton.

The work presented has been developed under the guidance of a Member Steering Group with nominated representatives from the County and District Council's as well as representatives from both Town and Parish Council's.

This strategy is a sub-strategy of the Cambridgeshire Local Transport Plan (LTP3) and has been developed under the auspices of that work and the emerging Long-Term Transport strategy (LTTS), both of which are covered under a separate report being considered at the same time.

### **Recommendation(s):**

Recommended that;

- i) Cabinet agrees and notes progress with the publication of the Draft Huntingdon & Godmanchester MTTS and confirms its support to the County Council and;
- ii) Grants delegated authority to the Executive Councillor for Strategic Planning and Housing and the Head of Development to agree any minor changes to the draft strategy following public consultation and prior to any final formal adoption.

This page is intentionally left blank

## **1. WHAT IS THIS REPORT ABOUT/PURPOSE?**

- 1.1 The purpose of this report is to present a draft Transport Strategy for Huntingdon & Godmanchester, which sets out a vision for transport in both towns and an action plan of measures up to 2026
- 1.2 This is a sub-strategy of LTP3 and has been developed with that and the emerging LTTS and has been the subject to public consultation until 11<sup>th</sup> July 2014.
- 1.3 The work has been developed under the guidance of a Member Steering Group with nominated representatives from the County and District Council's as well as representatives from both Town and Parish Council's.
- 1.4 The District Council is a partner to this process and is required to respond to the current consultation.

## **2. WHY IS THIS REPORT NECESSARY/BACKGROUND**

- 2.1 The first MTTS for Huntingdon & Godmanchester 2003 -2014 was approved in 2003 with the same broad aims and objectives of the revised version now being considered.
- 2.2 It is now necessary to update this strategy to reflect the work already undertaken as part of the current MTTS and the challenges now faced for the area as part of the emerging A14 proposals, proposed development and emerging growth proposals within the Huntingdon area as well as the emerging LTTS proposals.
- 2.3 The existing strategy has delivered a number of key objectives including;
  - The opening of the new West of Town Centre Link Road (Edison Bell Way)
  - Bus/Rail Interchange at Huntingdon Rail Station
  - Contraflow bus lane on Huntingdon ring-road
  - Road safety improvements at a number of key nodes
  - Delivery of an expanded cycling and walking network
  - Addressing the imbalance of long and short-stay car parking within Huntingdon town centre and managing long-stay parking demand

## **3. OPTIONS CONSIDERED/ANALYSIS**

- 3.1 A vital element of the proposed MTTS has been to develop this in tandem with the emerging proposals of both the Huntingdonshire Local Plan and the LTTS. Both outline a considerable level of growth within this area and while this offers significant opportunities for the local economy, it simultaneously poses challenges relating to the current levels of infrastructure.
- 3.2 The MTTS outlines that Huntingdon and its environs will be a key location for growth and presents the challenges faced within its vision. Based on these challenges, a number of key objectives have emerged to give direction to these and are listed as follows;
  - Support strategic sustainable development in and around Huntingdon
  - Keep Huntingdon moving
  - Ensure that the transport network supports the economy and acts as a catalyst for sustainable growth.

- Ensure good transport links between new and existing communities, and the jobs and services people wish to access.
- To enhance the transport linkages within Huntingdon
- Make travel safer
- Protect the historic and natural environment.

3.3 The strategy then goes on to present a number of Action Plans based on a series of key themes;

- Schemes arising from development
- Cycling & Walking including 6 key routes to facilitate improved accessibility
- Public Transport schemes (Short, medium and long-term)
- Wider road network, traffic and congestion issues (Short, medium and long-term)

3.4 In relation to the road network, traffic and congestion, the MTTS contains an important cross-reference to the emerging LTTS, particularly relating to a number of key proposals linked to the MTTS, which as well as the new A14, also include;

- High quality bus network linking St. Ives, Huntingdon, development at Alconbury Weald, potential development at RAF Wyton and onward linkage via the Guided Busway in the east and Peterborough to the north
- A141 junction improvements (also a 2003 MTTS issue)
- Safeguarding of new A141 alignment
- Hartford to Godmanchester link road

3.5 The strategy also provides the basis for funding opportunities including from LTP3, partner contributions, developer, S106 and CIL opportunities as well as those from the Local Growth Fund.

#### **4. COMMENTS OF OVERVIEW & SCRUTINY PANEL**

4.1 To be reported verbally.

#### **5. KEY IMPACTS/RISKS? HOW WILL THEY BE ADDRESSED?**

5.1 The Council is a key partner in the development and delivery of the MTTS and it is vital that we remain such to ensure that the right solutions emerge for strategy area, whilst protecting and mitigating any impacts that arise.

#### **6. WHAT ACTIONS WILL BE TAKEN/TIMETABLE FOR IMPLEMENTATION**

6.1 The Council will remain a key partner in the delivery of the MTTS. This strategy will be formally considered by the County Council in due course and if approved, a delivery programme will be developed within three timeframes;

- Short-term (2014 - 2017)
- Medium-term (2018 – 2021)
- Long-term (2021 2026)

#### **7. LINK TO THE CORPORATE PLAN**

7.1 Our Corporate Plan contains 4 Strategic Themes;

- A Strong Local Economy
- Enable Sustainable Growth
- Working with our Communities
- A Customer Focused and Service Led Council

7.2 The first three themes outlined above are key drivers of LTP3 and the emerging LTTS, to which this MTTTS is linked and by adopting the priorities of the fourth in our work on the delivery of the MTTTS, it will ensure that it fully aligns with the HDC Corporate Plan 2014-2016.

7.3 The MTTTS is a key element of the evidence base for the emerging Local Plan to 2036 and is a demonstration of an ongoing partnership between HDC and CCC to deliver co-ordinated growth.

## **8. CONSULTATION**

8.1 Working with partners, the County Council has been undertaking public consultation on the MTTTS, in tandem with LTP3 and the emerging LTTS. Once this is complete, the County Council will consider the findings, including the recommendations of this Council, and formal approval of the MTTTS.

## **9. LEGAL IMPLICATIONS**

*(Comments from the Head of Legal & Democratic Services)*

9.1 There are no direct legal implications for the Council.

## **10. RESOURCE IMPLICATIONS**

*(Comments from the Assistant Director, Finance & Resources)*

10.1 At the present time, no direct implications have been identified although it is expected that the Council will be a partner to emerging funding initiatives, particularly working with partners on Local Growth Fund applications via the Local Enterprise Partnership (LEP's). This will be monitored closely, including work that is undertaken in terms of bidding processes to Central Government and the eventual delivery and timescales of planned schemes as outlined within the strategy.

## **11. OTHER IMPLICATIONS**

*(Equalities, environment, ICT, etc)*

11.1 As part of this work, the County Council is required to refresh the Strategic Environmental Assessment (SEA), Habitats Regulations Assessments (HRA) and Community Impact Assessment (CIA) in order to ensure that both LTP3 and the LTTS fully comply with current guidance, which will itself inform the work of the MTTTS.

## **12 REASONS FOR THE RECOMMENDED DECISIONS**

*(Summary leading to the Recommendations)*

12.1 It is Recommended that;

- i) Cabinet agrees and notes progress with the publication of the Draft Huntingdon & Godmanchester MTTTS and confirms its support to the County Council and;

- ii) Grants delegated authority to the Executive Councillor for Strategic Planning and Housing and the Head of Development to agree any minor changes to the draft strategy following public consultation and prior to any final formal adoption.

### **13. LIST OF APPENDICES INCLUDED**

Appendix A – DRAFT Huntingdon & Godmanchester Market Town Transport Strategy

### **BACKGROUND PAPERS**

Huntingdon & Godmanchester Market Town Transport strategy 2003-2014  
Cambridgeshire Local Transport Plan 3  
Cambridgeshire Long Term Transport Strategy  
Draft Huntingdonshire Local Plan to 2036 Stage 3

### **CONTACT OFFICER**

Stuart Bell – Transport Team Leader  
01480 388387



**Huntingdon and Godmanchester Market Town Transport Strategy**

**Contents**

1. Introduction
2. Area and Scope of the Strategy
3. The Vision for Huntingdon and Godmanchester
4. Objectives of the Strategy
5. Transport Issues and Solutions
6. Funding
7. Monitoring

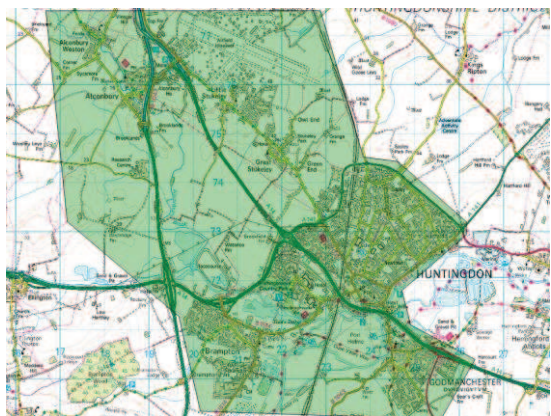
DRAFT

## 1. Introduction

- 1.1 This Market Town Transport Strategy sets out a transport vision for Huntingdon and Godmanchester and contains an action plan of measures up to 2026. It was developed under the guidance of elected Members from Cambridgeshire County Council, Huntingdonshire District Council, Huntingdon and Godmanchester Town Councils, and Brampton and The Stukeleys Parish Councils and public consultation.

## 2. Area and Challenges

- 2.1 The strategy area is shown in the figure below. While the action plan focuses on measures in the towns of Huntingdon and Godmanchester and their hinterland, the strategy also considers strategic issues in the wider area, such as travel to work patterns and links with the A14, and proposals for the neighbouring RAF Wyton area.



- 2.2 The strategy area covers the wards of Huntingdon North, Huntingdon East, Huntingdon West, Godmanchester and Alconbury and the Stukeleys, as well as Brampton village.

- 2.3 The strategy acknowledges some of the challenges particular to Huntingdon. These include but are not limited to:
- A growing dependency on the area for successful delivery of the Highways Agency's A14 Scheme to relieve existing network pressures, and cater for forthcoming development
  - A significant increase in vehicles using Huntingdon's road network due to large forthcoming developments, particularly at Alconbury Weald and Wyton-on-the-Hill.
  - The built form of Huntingdon town centre, and the gyratory ring road as a barrier to accessing key services, especially for pedestrians and cyclists.
  - How satellite villages around Huntingdon have limited or no public transport service
  - The river, the East Coast Main Line and various major roads (the A14, A141) serving as barriers between residential areas and services people wish to access.

- 2.4 *Throughout this strategy, the designation 'Huntingdon' will cover all of these wards while the designation 'Huntingdon Town' will cover the wards of Huntingdon North, Huntingdon East and Huntingdon West only (i.e with the intentional exclusion of Brampton, Godmanchester, Alconbury and the Stukeleys).*

### 3. The Vision for Huntingdon and Godmanchester

- 3.1 In the future, Huntingdon will be a key location for growth. Attracted to the 'crossroads of the East of England', new communities will flourish, and bring about new benefits to existing ones. Strategic development will be supported, with an emphasis on maintaining a good quality of life for all residents. Given that development will pose a significant challenge for Huntingdon's existing transport infrastructure, it will be important to maximise the value of existing capacity, add capacity, and promote sustainable modes of travel to gain maximum value out of the networks.
- 3.2 There will be improved access to services and facilities from both existing communities and new developments. Residents will be able to access education, employment, healthcare and leisure facilities across Huntingdon. Accessibility to Huntingdon Town will be improved from its surrounding areas. With an ageing population in Huntingdonshire district, it will be important for the local transport systems to be accessible and usable by all.
- 3.3 With enhanced sustainable transport improvements in place, in keeping with the unique identities of both towns, Huntingdon will be increasingly attractive for businesses to invest in and will allow the towns to thrive.

#### Objectives of the Strategy

*The strategy's objectives are informed by Cambridgeshire County Council's Local Transport Plan (LTP3), as well as:*

- *The previous MTTTS for Huntingdon and Godmanchester (2002-2014)*
- *The Long Term Transport Strategy for Cambridgeshire*
- *Huntingdonshire Local Plan*
- *Cambridgeshire Health and Well-being Strategy*

#### MTTTS objectives

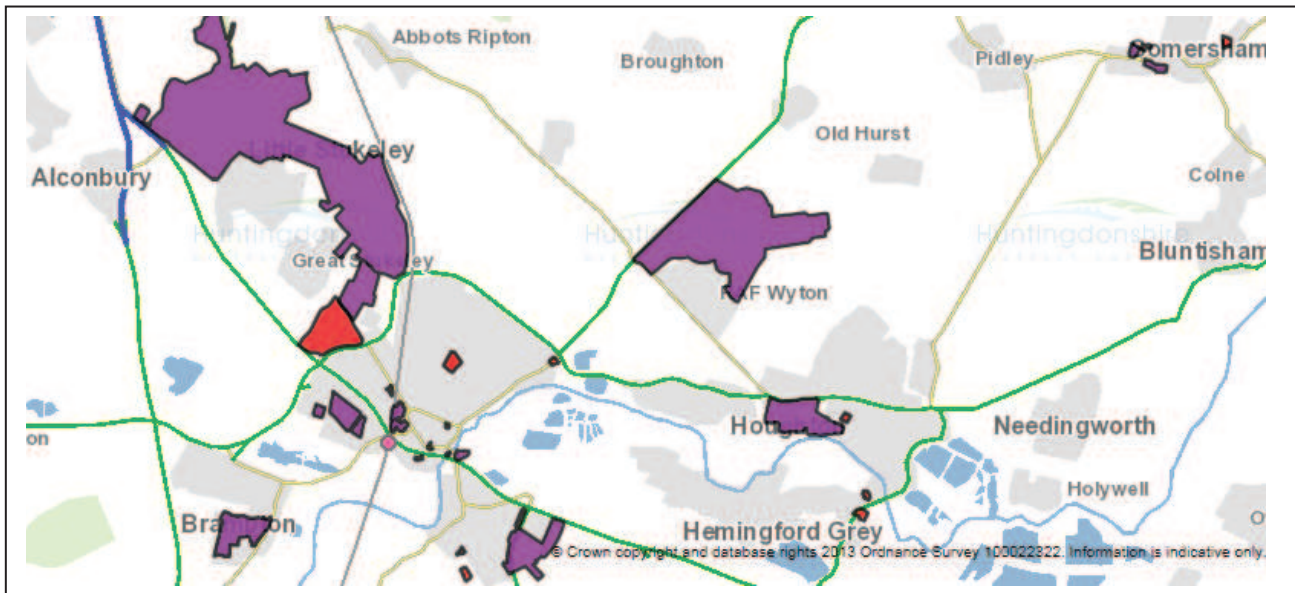
- Support strategic sustainable development in and around Huntingdon
- Keep Huntingdon moving
- Ensure that the transport network supports the economy and acts as a catalyst for sustainable growth.
- Ensure good transport links between new and existing communities, and the jobs and services people wish to access.
- To enhance the transport linkages within Huntingdon
- Make travel safer
- Protect the historic and natural environment.

**4. HDC Local Plan and Long Term Transport Strategy**

4.1 Huntingdonshire District Council are presently in consultation about their Local Plan. The HDC Local Plan serves to guide sustainable development in Huntingdonshire up to 2036 by discussing sites allocated for development and envisaging the nature of development. This growth offers significant opportunities for the local economy, while simultaneously posing challenges to the area’s present infrastructure.

4.2 While development is spread across the wider Huntingdon area; major sites are the Alconbury Weald Enterprise Zone, with 5000 dwellings envisaged, and the RAF Wyton site, with at least 3750 dwellings planned by 2036.

Allocations presently being considered are shown in the graphic below.



Mixed Use – Purple  
Housing - Red

4.3 The County Council is presently consulting on its Long Term Transport Strategy, which is a high-level countywide strategy document outlining the transport infrastructure required to support economic and housing growth up to 2050. The strategy outlines a series of proposed interventions for the wider Huntingdon and St Ives area.

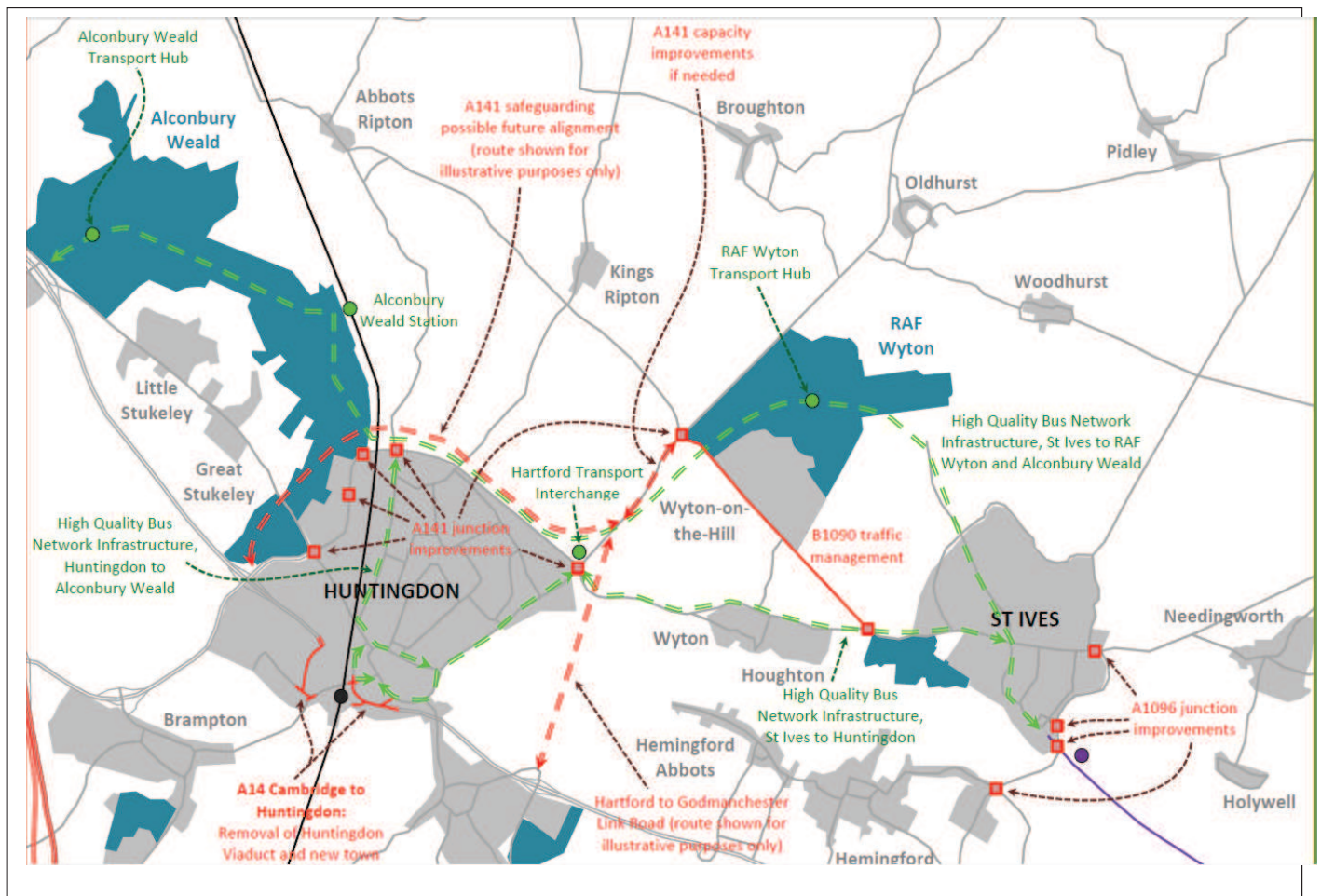
More information on the Huntingdonshire District Council Local Plan to 2036 can be accessed online at: <http://www.huntingdonshire.gov.uk/Planning/Planning%20Policy/Pages/LocalPlan2036.aspx>

4.4 The proposed key interventions in the LTTS are:

- The delivery of successful infrastructure necessary for a high quality public transport corridor between Alconbury-Huntingdon-Wyton-St Ives including a transport interchange (e.g park and ride) at Hartford Roundabout
- Safeguarding land north of the A14 to anticipate a new Northern Bypass
- A new link road between Hartford roundabout and the A14/Godmanchester junction

4.5 The strategy of the LTTS is to cater for additional trips through improved public transport, while increasing capacity in the road network in the long term, by means of the schemes shown below. This MTTTS will concern itself with schemes which support these overarching interventions, and complement the strategic vision of the LTTS.

4.6 By proposing these interventions, the LTTS seeks to establish a way of supporting and facilitating economic growth. The significant investment in major road infrastructure around Huntingdon will seek to improve conditions on the highway network while investment in a high quality public transport corridor will give new residents a genuine alternative to the private car for their daily commute.



All major planning applications will be expected to carry out a full Transport Assessment highlighting the specific impact of their development on the local transport networks, along with any necessary measures to mitigate their impact including a travel plan to encourage the use of sustainable transport modes. The following table concerns some of these necessary measures.

Scheme	Indicative Cost
<b><u>Initial schemes concerning development</u></b>	
<p>Ensure quality pedestrian and cyclist links into Huntingdon emerge as part of the proposed Wyton Airfield development. This will involve working closely with local landowners to scope out where a route might be possible.</p>	<b>Dependent on development</b>
<p>Ensure quality pedestrian and cyclist links emerge as part of the RAF Brampton development. These should link to the west towards the A1 and to the east towards Ouse Valley Way. Delivery of improved walking and cycling measures on Church Laner/Buckden Road corridor to connecting with existing provision on either side (to be managed by RAF Brampton)</p>	
<p>Ensure quality pedestrian and cyclist links emerge as part of the Alconbury Weald development. These should connect to Alconbury village (with safe passage across the A14), North Huntingdon and the existing built up area (with safe pedestrian and cycling links across the A141). Links should also be sought to Great Fen.</p>	
<p>Deliver quality pedestrian and cyclist links as part of the Bearscroft Farm development including safe passage across the A1198..</p>	
<p>Ensure quality pedestrian and cyclist links emerge as part of the proposed Ermine St/Northbridge development. These should offer safe passage across the A141.</p>	
<p>Provision of a new, regular bus service, to serve all of the following: Stukeley Meadows; Huntingdon town centre; Huntingdon railway station; Hinchingsbrooke (including the hospital, residential area and business park) and proposed Ermine St/Northbridge development. Such a service would need to be promoted and funded by the Ermine St/Northbridge development should this proposal come forward.</p>	
<p>Provision of higher frequency bus services between Godmanchester and Huntingdon town centre, together with wider roll-out of real time passenger information, to accompany the Bearscroft Farm development. Local traffic management measures on the Post Street corridor should these be triggered, through ongoing monitoring of traffic flows, by the Bearscroft Farm development.</p>	

## 5. Challenges and Opportunities

### Background

- 5.1 Huntingdon lies on the A14, approximately equidistant between Cambridge to the south-east, and Peterborough to the north. The A1 runs in close proximity to the west of Huntingdon and Huntingdon railway station is situated on the East Coast Mainline. According to Census data, the populations of Huntingdon and Godmanchester were approximately 23,732 and 6,711 respectively in 2011. In addition, the wards of Alconbury and the Stukeleys, and Brampton contribute a further 10,997 to the population from the immediate surrounding area

- 5.2 While the strong road links which serve Huntingdon ensure that there will continue to be a strong uptake for private car usage, this strategy will seek to effect a modal shift towards more sustainable forms of transport, with a particular focus on the daily commute.

### Method of travel to work

- 5.3 The most popular method of travel to work is private car, followed by walking. The percentage of residents who opt to walk to work is significantly greater in the Huntingdon wards than the more rural wards, in which there is a greater take up for driving and working from home. Method of Travel to work figures for Huntingdon, as shown in the 2011 Census, are given below.

Red – Below average for Huntingdonshire  
Green – Above average for Huntingdonshire

	Work Mainly at or From Home	Train	Bus, Minibus or Coach	Passenger in a Car or Van	On Bike	On Foot	Driving a Car or Van	Other
Huntingdon East	3.96% (191)	4.36% (210)	2.59% (125)	5.62% (271)	6.08% (293)	14.32% (690)	61.01% (2940)	2.05% (99)
Huntingdon North	1.60% (52)	2.19% (71)	4.01% (130)	8.02% (260)	6.26% (203)	23.97% (777)	51.68% (1675)	2.25% (73)
Huntingdon West	3.54% (153)	7.37% (318)	1.95% (84)	4.38% (189)	5.47% (236)	18.79% (811)	57.16% (2467)	1.34% (58)
Brampton	6.39% (223)	3.92% (137)	1.75% (61)	3.47% (121)	4.70% (164)	13.86% (484)	63.83% (2229)	2.09% (73)
Godmanchester	5.92% (214)	5.62% (203)	1.80% (65)	5.31% (192)	5.73% (207)	8.02% (290)	65.94% (2383)	1.66% (60)
Alconbury and The Stukeleys	8.17% (157)	3.43% (66)	1.30% (25)	5.52% (106)	1.66% (32)	4.79% (92)	73.41% (1411)	1.72% (33)
Huntingdonshire	6.12%	3.73%	2.50%	5.05%	3.63%	9.30%	68.12%	1.56%

- 5.4 Uptake for commuting via bus is relatively low across all the wards. The majority of wards have a higher rate for commuting via rail than the district average. With the exception of Alconbury and the Stukeleys all wards have a higher cycling rate than the district average.

### Walking and Cycling

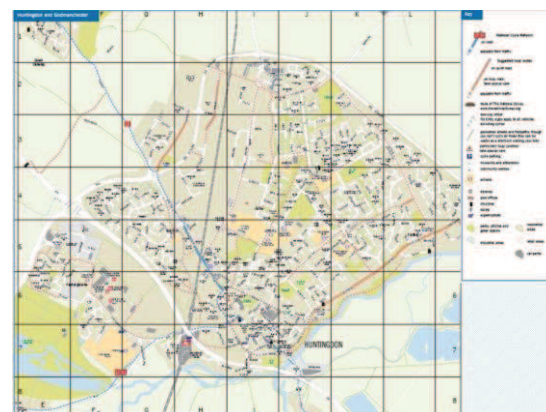
- 5.5 The pedestrian and cycle networks in the strategy area are shown on the maps below. Huntingdon is served by the Ouse Valley Way, which links to St Neots and St Ives via Brampton and Godmanchester. National Cycle Network (NCN) route 51 provides a connection from the south via St Neots, Grafham Water and Brampton and to the east to St Ives and onwards to Cambridge. NCN route 12 provides a link to Peterborough to the north. The pedestrian and cycle network in Huntingdon and Godmanchester has been significantly improved since the first MTTs was approved in 2003, including investment in new cycle routes and enhanced safety measures.

- 5.6 Overall, cycling and walking rates are higher than the average for both Huntingdonshire and the East of England, although these figures have fallen since 2001 according to Census data.



A full sized version of this map is included in Appendix A

- 5.7 Another significant issue is the role of the High Street as a key strategic link, offering connections for pedestrians and cyclists to both Godmanchester, Brampton and wards in the north of Huntingdon, including The Stukeleys. It offers secure passage through the town centre without having to negotiate the ring road. It is also part of Route #12 as designated by the National Cycle Network.



A full sized version of this map is included in Appendix A



- 5.8 Presently there are limitations on cycling in the High Street and this has been a significant area of local concern. Cycling is only permitted in the northbound direction from midnight-10am and 4pm-midnight, and is not permitted in the southbound direction. The High Street is often used by schoolchildren cycling from Godmanchester to Hinchingsbrooke School and from St Peter's School, as well as many other cyclists. Of the main approaches into Huntingdon, the B104 from Godmanchester accounts for 59% of cycling flows, and Brampton Road accounts for 28%, reflecting the desire to cycle to and from Godmanchester and Brampton.
- 5.9 A key strategic issue is the way in which the town's main roads inhibit access for cyclists and pedestrians; in particular the A14, the A141 and the ring road. Furthermore certain developments which do have high quality linkages to services are let down by poor signage. Stukeley Meadows is served by a footpath which connects to the town centre and Hinchingsbrooke Hospital. However the footpath, situated at the bottom of the development, is not well signposted and although valued locally, could be improved and generate far higher levels of usage. Most of the town's residential developments are situated to the north of the historic centre, while certain key amenities, such as Hinchingsbrooke Hospital, the railway station and the bus station are located to the south and west of the centre. Consequently routes within the ring road are used as through routes, as alternatives are off-putting. As part of the aspiration to sort out misleading signage in the town centre and raise awareness of permitted cycle routes there may be an opportunity to review the nature of the restrictions on cycling. Reviewing permissions in the High Street may encourage higher levels of cycling within the town, including the number people who cycle to work. To achieve this modal shift, facilities for cyclists at key employment sites would have to be provided
- 5.10 In light of the strategic issues mentioned above, this strategy recognises the need for a series of strong radial routes which connect the town centre with outlying wards.
- 5.11 Infrastructure developments will be targeted at 'missing links', under-served desire-lines and safety improvements. The next phase of work will identify and prioritise the schemes which feature in the action plan to meet the overarching objectives of the strategy. The nature of these schemes will have to respond to existing and forthcoming transport needs.
- 5.12 Greater levels of high quality cycle parking provision will be sought at key destinations including, among others, within both Huntingdon and Godmanchester centres, the railway station, at Hinchingsbrooke, and at other key hubs identified below."



Route	Location	Work required	Cost
1A	The Stukeleys – Stukeley Meadows	Provision of a high quality cycle facilities flanking the B1044 which would connect the proposed Ermine Street/Northbridge development, and others development proposals in the area, with Alconbury Weald frontage via the Stukeleys. Delivery of a crossing of the A141 from proposed Northbridge to Stukeley Meadows.	£480k
1B	Stukeley Meadows – Town Centre	Improvements of existing cycle/pedestrian infrastructure to make it suitable for all users. This includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Toucan crossing on Wertheim Way to serve local schoolchildren</li> <li>- Short term crossing of Stukeley Road to improve access to Stukeley Meadows Industrial Estate</li> <li>- Widening, surfacing and lighting improvements to current route where appropriate.</li> <li>- Improved link to Hinchingsbrooke Hospital</li> <li>- Surfacing improvements along Ferrars Road and removal of unnecessary street furniture at ring road crossing</li> <li>- Existing permissions to be changed on High St between Market Square and the ring road to accommodate two-way cycling</li> </ul>	£200k
2	Alconbury Weald – Town Centre	Provision of additional infrastructure to current facilities to provide a direct route from the Enterprise Zone to the town centre. This includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Crossing of the A141 (to be resolved by Alconbury Weald)</li> <li>- Negotiating the Huntingdon Rd/St Peter's Rd/Kings Ripton Rd roundabout</li> <li>- Delivering new improved infrastructure off Sallowbush Road</li> <li>- Continuing cycling facilities for Ambury Road between Ambury Hill and the ring road</li> <li>- Improved surfacing and widening on existing paths between Ambury Road and St Peter's School, as well as Ambury Road and Ermine Street.</li> <li>- Northbound contra flow lane for Ambury Road between ringroad and Ashton Gardens.</li> <li>- Northbound cycling permitted on Ambury Road South</li> </ul>	£400k
3	Oxmoor – Town Centre	Amendments to existing route to encourage greater usage: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Improved surfacing on Priory Road (with potential for different patterns to highlight to motorists the potential for cyclists to use it as an everyday route)</li> <li>- Northbound contra flow lane on Priory Lane</li> </ul>	£60k
4	Wyton - Hartford – Town Centre	Provision of a new segregated cycle lane to accompany the A1123 between Old Houghton Road and Wyton. This would allow cyclists to ride safely from the Thicket Path to Hartford. This scheme will involve working closely with the Environment Agency to ensure that a route can be built without compromising local flood defences. This route should connect to cycling infrastructure provided by the development at Wyton Airfield  Investigate feasibility for enhanced facilities to make Hartford Road a safer environment for cyclists to use, such as public realm improvements, traffic management schemes and surfacing improvements; this should be considered as development around Huntingdon (and especially at Wyton-on-the-Hill) comes forward.	£350k
5	Godmanchester – Town Centre	Traffic calming measures for Post Street and Causeway. Along with surfacing and lighting improvements to NCN51 and Cambridge Road. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Promotion of an alternate route to cycling in the High Street, via St Mary's Street, Malthouse Close and Princes Street, complemented by correct and clear signage to enforce existing pedestrianisation OR</li> <li>- Consideration of improving the shared footway from Town Bridge to Mill Common via the ring road.</li> </ul> Investigate feasibility for public realm improvements to encourage additional usage of Post Street by pedestrians and cyclists. This may include in the long term, discussions over closure of Godmanchester Town Bridge if deemed appropriate by Godmanchester residents.	£100k  £35k
6	Brampton – Town Centre	Amendments to existing route to encourage greater usage. Investigate reviewing permissions for cycling in both directions on George Street  Improvement of Brampton Road/Hinchingsbrooke Park Road junction for cyclists and pedestrians (to be managed by Highways Agency). Consideration of removal of cycling order on south side of Thrapston Road. Delivery of cycling infrastructure in Church Road and Buckden Road to connecting with existing provision on either side (to be managed by RAF Brampton)	£70k

Walking improvements	Indicative Costs
<p>Improvements to existing footways on key routes, such as from car parks, to provide increased width where applicable and better surfacing quality and improved lighting if required. Selection of routes to be informed by results of an LSTF pedestrian audit commissioned by CCC.</p>	<p>£100,000</p>
<p>Review of existing street lights to assess potential for additional street lights on well used routes which could benefit from improved lighting; this would be done with a view to enhancing personal safety and security for pedestrians. Selection of routes to be informed by results of an LSTF pedestrian audit commissioned by CCC, and consultation with local parish councils.</p>	<p>£100,000</p>

## Public Transport

### Buses

- 5.13 Huntingdon bus station is located in the west of the town centre, just within the one-way ring road. A contra-flow bus lane, built as part of the first MTTs, allows buses travelling from the rail station to access the bus station in an easier manner than if they were required to circumnavigate most of the length of the ring road.



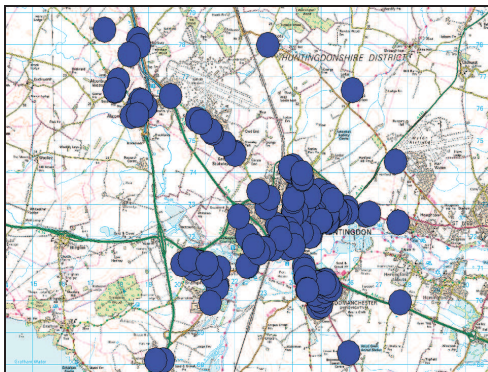
Service	To	Peak Hour Frequency	Evening Frequency	Sunday Frequency
Busway B	Peterborough	Hourly	Hourly	N/A
Busway B	St Ives and Cambridge	4 buses/hour	Hourly	3 buses/hour
7	Godmanchester	3 buses/hour	N/A	N/A
30/35	Warboys (via Sapley and Hartford)	Hourly	N./A	N/A
66	Brampton and St Neots	Hourly	N/A	N/A

- 5.14 The most frequent bus service in Huntingdon, is the Busway B service, which serves residential areas in the north-east of the town, the town centre, the rail station and Hinchingbrooke Hospital. The service provides a connection to St Ives and Cambridge, as well as a service to Peterborough. Huntingdon is served by a number of other bus services:

- 5.15 One challenge is to improve provision for public transport to/from key employment sites. For commuters travelling to/from other towns in the area, the hope is that this challenge will be met by future busway services. There is a desire for a new busway service to serve commuters in St Ives and Peterborough, calling at RAF Wyton (if approved), Huntingdon,

Alconbury Weald and Sawtry, then onto Stilton and Peterborough. It is vital that such public transport links are in place for the Enterprise Zone and the wider Alconbury Weald development to ensure efficient connections with Huntingdon town centre, which will act as its service Hub. These longer distance services also need to be complemented by a regular service which connects employment sites with local wards and parishes in the Huntingdon and Godmanchester area.

- 5.16 The figure below illustrates areas of Huntingdon and immediate hinterland situated within 400m of a bus stop:



*A larger version of this map is included in Appendix B*

- 5.17 The map illustrates how most of Huntingdon, Godmanchester, Brampton and the Stukeleys are served by at least one bus/hour during the peak periods. With the exception of certain Busway B services, these services terminate at Huntingdon town centre, and therefore direct services from surrounding settlements (such as from Godmanchester-Cambridge or Brampton-Peterborough) do not operate at the moment; residents need

to change in Huntingdon.

Areas which do not have access to a bus service include Hinchbrooke and Stukeley Meadows, although planned development is seeking to address those deficiencies.

### *Community Transport*

- 5.18 For those people who cannot use conventional public transport, or have limited or no access to a car or bicycle, community transport opportunities are available. Huntingdonshire Association for Community Transport (HACT) is the predominant local operator, with services including a “ring-&-ride” into Huntingdon (and other market towns in Huntingdonshire and to Peterborough), as well as to other destinations, places of interest and excursions. HACT also offers a minibus hire service for community groups and not-for-profit organisations.
- 5.19 A number of volunteer car schemes are also available in the local area, covering Huntingdon, Godmanchester, Brampton, The Stukeleys and Alconbury, Buckden and The Riptons. These offer transport for social and medical reasons, such as shopping, visiting friends or medical appointments<sup>1</sup> A shopmobility scheme is also available

---

<sup>1</sup> ‘Community Transport in Huntingdonshire’, pg.6, accessed at <http://www.cambridgeshire.gov.uk/NR/rdonlyres/8CBBC7DD-14EE-4113-A713-1E61C5AE11E5/0/ParishAZCTinHunts2.pdf>

- 5.20 In addition, the Cambridgeshire Future Transport initiative will invest £1.5m in alternative and more community-led solutions to providing transport to meet local needs in Cambridgeshire.
- 5.21 There is a perception amongst Huntingdon's residents that existing provision is inadequate. The results of the data gathering survey confirm this, with only 33% of respondents willing to agree that bus services met their needs. When asked to comment specifically on the Guided Busway, the vast majority of respondents felt that the existing service between Huntingdon and St Ives is too slow, and would welcome a more direct service, such as via an old A14 route. Furthermore 51% of respondents stated that they would be more likely to use the Busway if it served Godmanchester. With respect to specific locations, the provision of a Busway stop for Houghton & Wyton on the A1123 was the most common response. While Huntingdon's bus station is suitably located in the town centre, much could be done to improve existing facilities.

### Rail

- 5.22 Huntingdon railway station is situated to the west of Huntingdon town centre, and is located on the East Coast Mainline. The station is currently served by First Capital Connect, with journeys to Peterborough or London Kings Cross approximately every half hour Monday-Saturday and every hour on Sundays. There is a more frequent service to London Kings Cross during the weekday morning peak. Services to Kings Cross also call

at St Neots.

- 5.23 Use of the station has steadily increased over recent years, with 1,267,164 entries and exits by rail passengers in 2002/2003 rising to 1,673,204 in 2011/2012<sup>2</sup>. A public transport interchange was delivered as part of the previous MTTs to increase usage of the station. There is a significant demand placed on existing parking spaces.
- 5.24 The Great Northern route to Peterborough will be part of the new Thameslink timetable that will come into effect serving Huntingdon in 2018/19. This will deliver extra seating and new rolling stock serving additional destinations within London and through the capital to numerous destinations in the south of England. This strategy will seek to support improved linkages to the rail station to support this project.
- 5.25 Discussions are ongoing about the possibility of a railway station to serve the emerging Alconbury Weald development.

For those people who cannot use conventional public transport, or have limited or no access to a car or bicycle, community transport opportunities are available. Huntingdonshire Association for Community Transport (HACT) is the predominant local operator, with services including a "ring-&-ride" into Huntingdon (and

---

<sup>2</sup> Data taken from the Office of Rail Regulation website. Spreadsheets can be accessed at <http://www.rail-reg.gov.uk/server/show/nav.1529>

other market towns in Huntingdonshire and to Peterborough), as well as to other destinations, places of interest and excursions. HACT also offers a minibus hire service for community groups and not-for-profit organisations.

- 5.26 A number of volunteer car schemes are also available in the local area, covering Huntingdon, Godmanchester, Brampton, The Stukeleys and Alconbury, Buckden and The Riptons. These offer transport for social and medical reasons, such as shopping, visiting friends or medical appointments<sup>3</sup> A shopmobility scheme is also available.
- 5.27 In addition, the Cambridgeshire Future Transport initiative will invest £1.5m in alternative and more community-led solutions to providing transport to meet local needs in Cambridgeshire.



Public transport schemes

Scheme	Indicative Cost
<b>Short term (2014-2017)</b>	
Improvements to the bus station through partnership approach with improved information and advertising of services.	Depends on options
Work closely with local bus operators to secure a Busway stop for Houghton & Wyton at A1123. (Possible use of LSTF funding).	£2000-20000
Increase funding for HACT.	To be determined in relation to local stakeholders
<b>Medium term (2018-2021)</b>	
Work closely with local bus operators to explore the potential for an express Busway service between Huntingdon town centre and St Ives town centre/busway, as well as bus priority into Huntingdon from Brampton Road and the old alignment of the A14.	
Investigate options for a more reliable and frequent public transport service between Godmanchester and Huntingdon. Service frequency enhancements and real time passenger information are being provided in conjunction with the Bearscroft Farm development.	
Provision of a new, regular bus service, to serve all of the following: Stukeley Meadows; Huntingdon town centre; Huntingdon railway station; Hinchingsbrooke (including the hospital, residential area and business park) and proposed Ermine St/Northbridge development. Such a service would need to be promoted and funded by the Ermine St/Northbridge development, if approved.	
<b>Long Term (2022-2026)</b>	
Work closely with rail operators, central government and local stakeholders to support the provision of a railway station at Alconbury Weald and provide input into consultation of long-term franchising arrangements for Thameslink services*	
Work with the bus operating companies to ensure that a new Busway service emerges to connect St Ives, Wyton Airfield, Huntingdon, Alconbury Weald and Peterborough (funded as part of planned development if approved). *	
Feasibility study to explore potential role of Park & Ride sites to intercept traffic on key public transport corridors.	

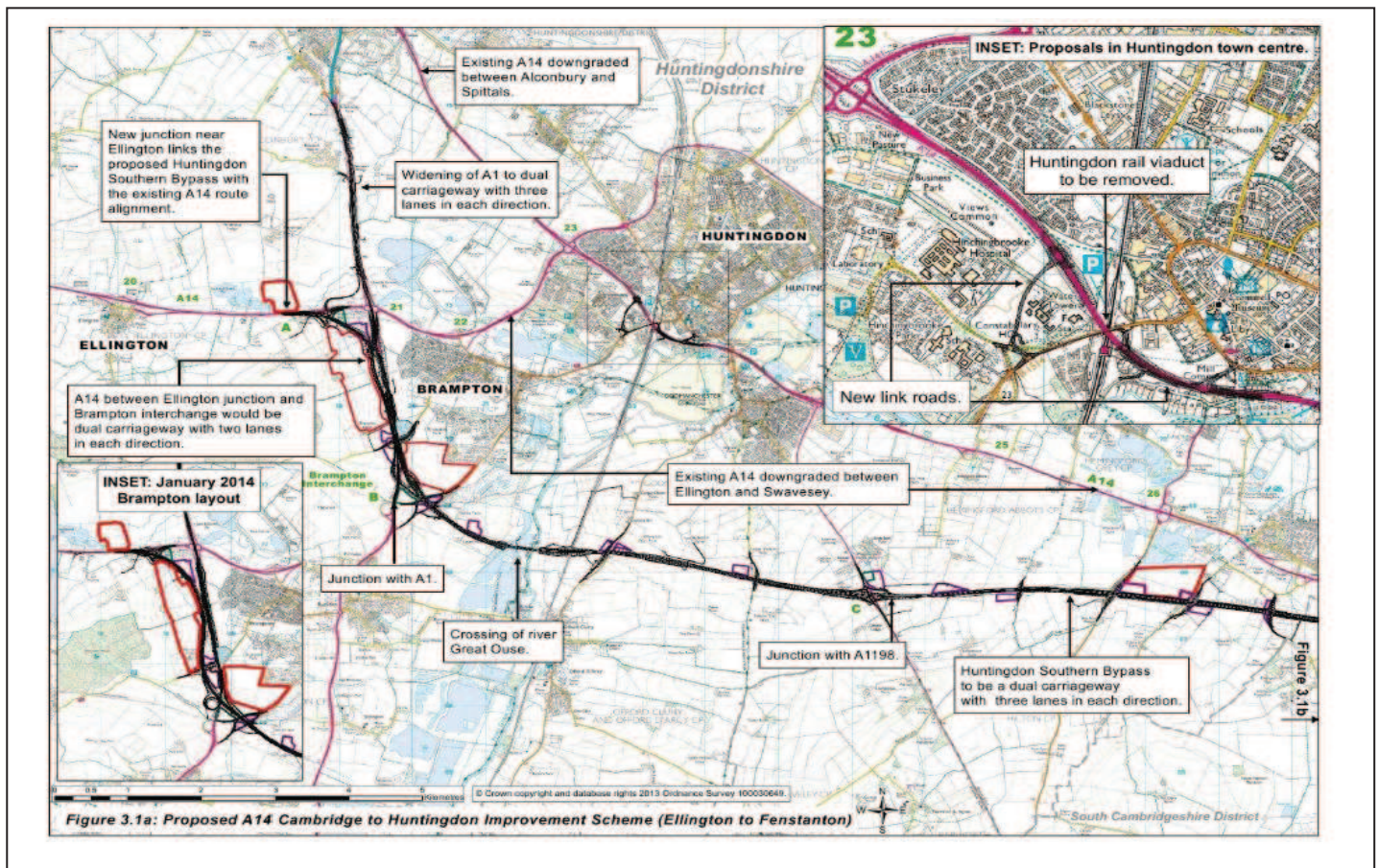
## Road network and parking issues

- 5.28 Huntingdon and Godmanchester are situated in close proximity to two major roads. Firstly, the A14 provides access to Kettering and onwards, the M1 in the west and to Cambridge and to eastern coast to the east. Secondly the A1(M), which lies to the west of the towns, provides access to London to the south, and also to Peterborough and the north.

The government, in their June Spending Review 2013, committed to predominately fund the widening of the A14 between Ellington and Milton, as well as the construction of a new bypass between Ellington and Fen Drayton to the south of Huntingdon and Godmanchester.

*A diagram of the A14 Scheme presently being formally consulted on by the Highways Agency. A larger version can be found in Appendix C.*

The now completed A14 Study indicates that these schemes will significantly reduce the amount of traffic in Huntingdon, Godmanchester and surrounding villages and remove current rat-running to avoid the existing route. Huntingdonshire District Council and Cambridgeshire County Council have indicated to the Government that the removal of the A14 viaduct over the East Coast Main Line is a vital component to the scheme in terms of improving local traffic flows. The removal of the viaduct would allow for the creation of new access roads into the town centre, improving accessibility for all modes and allowing the existing A14 alignment to serve as a high quality local road. This in turn would ease pressure on the Spittals interchange, the A141 bypass and main thoroughfares in Godmanchester.



## Wider road issues

- 5.29 Huntingdon town centre features a one-way ring road. Other than the A14, there is only one local road connection between Huntingdon and Godmanchester, which is via the narrow and historic Town Bridge. It is recognised that a number of vehicles travelling west along the A14 and heading for Huntingdon, exit at Godmanchester, and therefore increase traffic levels within Godmanchester and over this structure. A new A14 scheme gives a significant opportunity to reduce traffic on this route and the strategy will look to build on that.
- 5.30 Recent figures suggest that in 2012 approximately 83% of all vehicles which enter Huntingdon are cars & taxis, whilst light goods, heavy goods and buses & coaches account for 10%, 2% and 1% respectively. Within Huntingdon, cars & taxis accounted for approximately 73% of all traffic in 2010, with light goods, heavy goods and buses & coaches accounting for 7%, 1% and 6% respectively<sup>4</sup>
- 5.31 The percentage of households in the local area with no access to a car or van is 18%. Car ownership levels vary considerably across local wards, with just 8% of households in the rural ward of Alconbury and The Stukeleys having no access to a car or van, whilst in Huntingdon North 34% of households have no access to a car or van<sup>5</sup>.

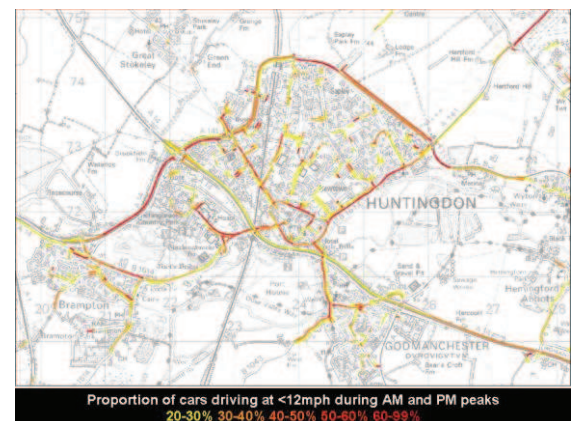
4

<http://www.cambridgeshire.gov.uk/transport/monitoring/Traffic+Monitoring+Report.htm> pg.19

<sup>5</sup> Car and van ownership statistics from 2001 Census. 18% is the average across the six local wards of Alconbury and The

## Traffic and congestion

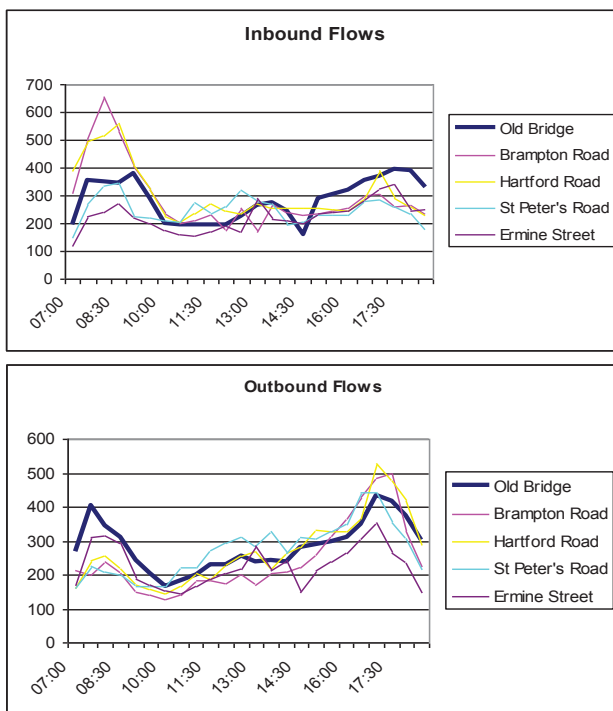
- 5.32 Huntingdon and the surrounding area suffer from heavy traffic flows, especially during peak hours, as shown in the figures below. While this is not uncommon for a busy market town but it is considered that these are greatly affected by current A14 issues. The figure below illustrates the main areas which suffer from congestion in Huntingdon during the AM and PM peaks.



- 5.33 The data gathering survey reported that 72% of residents regularly experience 'significant delay' when driving around Huntingdon and Godmanchester. Access into Huntingdon from the A14 is either through Brampton village, accessed from Junction 22, the Northern Bypass, accessed via Spittals Interchange, or Godmanchester, accessed from Junction 24. Many respondents in the data gathering survey complained of

Stukeleys (8%), Brampton (11%), Godmanchester (11%), Huntingdon East (22%), Huntingdon North (34%) and Huntingdon West (15%).

Godmanchester being used as a shortcut for the A14 and residential routes used as rat runs. In 2012, an average of 2,000 more cars accessed and exited Huntingdon via Godmanchester than the number which used Spittalls Interchange (for Ermine St) as an entrance/exit point. The graphs below illustrate how the Town Bridge is the most popular way for car drivers to leave Huntingdon in the morning and the most popular way of entering Huntingdon in the evening.



5.34 There are sections of the ring road that are at or nearing capacity during peak hours at certain times. A new link road, to the west of the town centre, connecting Ermine Street and Brampton Road, has now been constructed and aims to ease some of the pressure on the ring road and remove unnecessary journeys around it. Modelling work has indicated that this will potentially cause greater

levels of traffic congestion on the surrounding highway network. More work needs to be done to discourage people from using Huntingdon's internal road network where there is a viable and convenient alternative.

5.35 This strategy acknowledges the pressures which forthcoming development will place on Huntingdon's existing road network. While it is hoped that the delivery of the A14 scheme will result in a significant reduction in traffic for certain parts of Huntingdon, it is acknowledged that other parts of the network which lie in close proximity to growth sites will receive a significant increase in vehicle trips. Furthermore, the A14 scheme itself may prompt a culture of rat-running through certain wards.

#### Car parking

5.36 There is a mixture of long and short stay car parks available in Huntingdon and Godmanchester, with a number of price bands depending on length of stay, in addition to some free car parks and disabled parking facilities. A significant concentration of these public car parks is located inside the ring road, serving the historic town centre and aimed at short-stay visits. Huntingdonshire District Council undertook a review of parking provision in the town, resulting in an Action Plan covering 2008-2011, much of which has now been completed. The primary emphasis for a number of years has been on removing long-stay parking sites from the town centre outside the ring road, to encourage trips into the town centre to be made

on foot. Car parking sites are located as follows:



5.37 A further review was undertaken during 2012 with changes coming into effect in April 2013. This concentrated on pricing mechanisms and further removal of public car parking in excess of 4 hours duration.

Scheme	Indicative Cost
Short term (2014-2017)	
Ensure accessibility for buses and emergency vehicles passing through the Newtown area, especially Ambury Road, American Lane, Cowper Road and Primrose Lane. Explore feasibility for one way systems on certain streets (such as Great Northern Street) to reduce rat running.	
Introduce a Variable Message Signing (VMS) system on the ring road and on the main approaches to the ring road (Brampton Road, Ermine Street, St Peter's Street, Hartford Road, The Avenue) to distribute traffic evenly across available parking spaces.	£15,000
CCC's Travel for Work team to work alongside major employers in Huntingdon to encourage staggered arrival and departure times from work.	<b>To be determined</b>
Medium term (2018-2021)	
Align both junction and kerb on Huntingdon side of Town Bridge for traffic heading into Huntingdon to reduce the pinch point. Possible to integrate with scheme which may be provided via the Bearscroft Farm planning permission should traffic flow monitoring require this to be implemented .	<b>£40,000</b>
Improved road signage on the ring road.	<b>£75,000</b>
Long Term (2021-2026)	
Work closely with Highways Agency, Central Government, and other local authorities to ensure that the new A14 bypass is successfully delivered and the design options for the existing A14 alignment and linkage to Huntingdon, inc. Viaduct removal	

## 6. Funding

6.1 Funding the schemes listed in this strategy will be sought from a number of different sources. The delivery of the Strategy and the pace of delivery will be dependent on securing funding from a range of sources. The current funding environment remains challenging, with funding from Central Government reducing significantly. In many cases, a range of funding sources will be needed to support delivery of priorities identified in the Action Plan and are expected to include some funding from the following sources :

- LTP funding - The integrated transport block provides capital funding which is used primarily for relatively small scale physical improvements to local transport networks.
- District Council and Parish Council funding / contributions towards schemes - District, City, Town and Parish Councils sometimes contribute funding towards the delivery of transport infrastructure and services that help them deliver local priorities in their areas.
- Developer funding - Community Infrastructure Levy (CIL) and S106 funding negotiated from developers towards schemes to mitigate the impacts of development proposals on the transport network.
- Local Growth Fund - Government is proposing the establishment of this fund from 2015/16 for administration by the Local Enterprise Partnership (LEP)

to support priority projects which support and help drive economic growth. A significant amount of the funding is being allocated from Department for Transport Major Schemes Funding

- Grant funding from other sources - Other opportunities to fund transport measures may occur, particularly where the interventions achieve wider social, environmental or economic benefits. Possible sources include Local Growth Fund, European funding, funding from government departments other than the Department for Transport, and funding from local stakeholders.

### Maintenance

6.2 Cambridgeshire County Council has an on-going maintenance programme in place. Where transport improvement schemes and maintenance schemes can be coordinated, work is combined to save time, resources and provide value for money.

6.3 Maintenance schemes are generally funded from the following sources:

- County Council revenue funding - Significant levels of revenue funding are used by the Council to undertake the day-to-day management and maintenance of the local transport network in Cambridgeshire. This includes small scale maintenance works such as pothole filling and emptying of gullies, winter maintenance, road safety education and maintenance of

traffic signals and street lighting.

- LTP Maintenance Block - The Maintenance Block provides capital funding for major maintenance works to the transport network, including major resurfacing, maintenance or replacement of bridges, tunnels and other highway structures.

6.4 The pace at which the strategy can be delivered will depend upon the availability of this funding. By providing a clear statement of the schemes for which there is public support in the towns, this strategy aims to provide a platform for securing a wide range of funding sources.

## 7. Monitoring of delivery and future reviews and updates

7.1 Following the adoption of this Strategy, progress on the delivery of the schemes set out in the Strategy's action plan section will be monitored annually and reported on via Cambridgeshire County Council's website ([www.cambridgeshire.gov.uk/transport/strategies](http://www.cambridgeshire.gov.uk/transport/strategies)). As part of this annual monitoring process, the contents of the action plan and the Strategy will also be

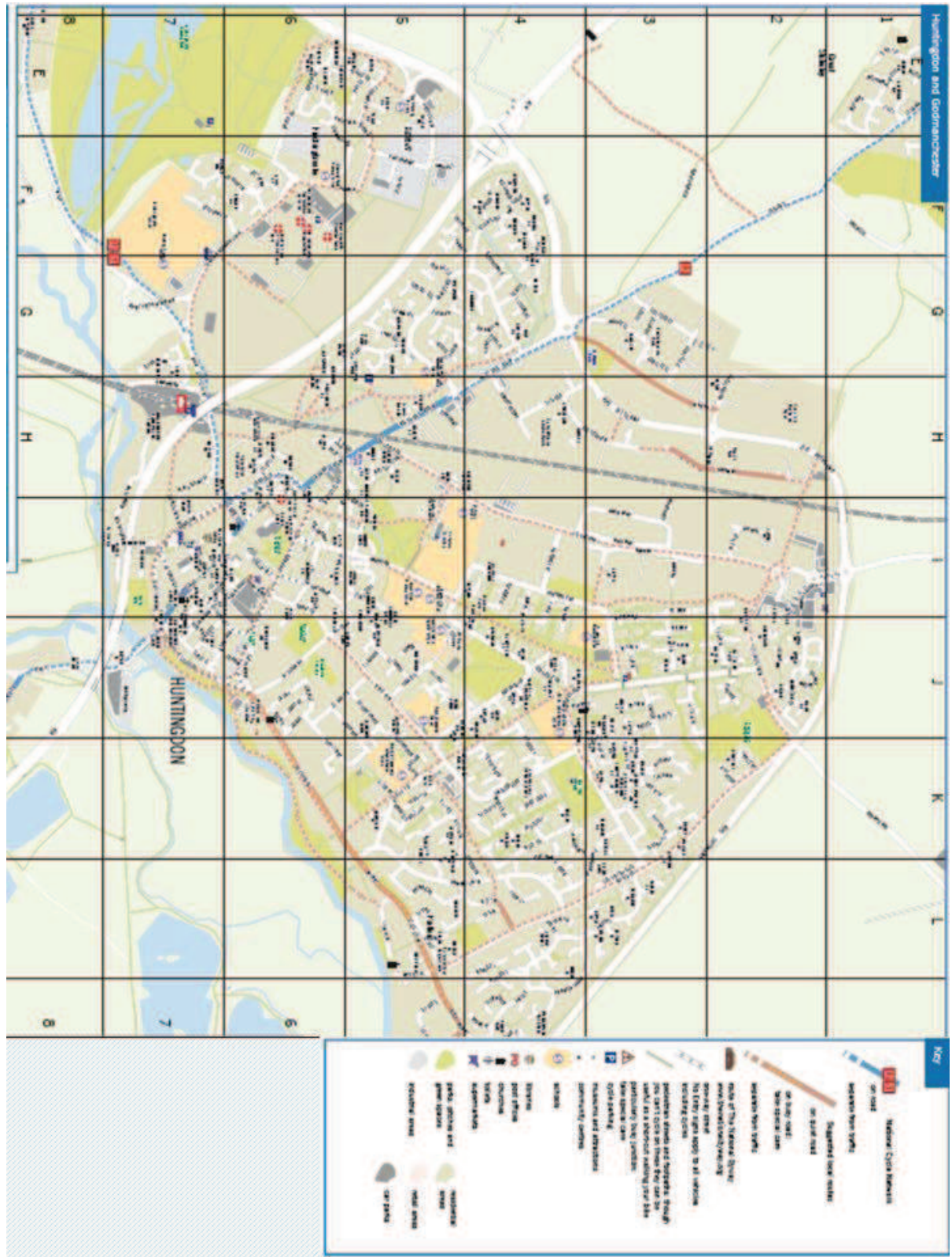
reviewed and updated if necessary.

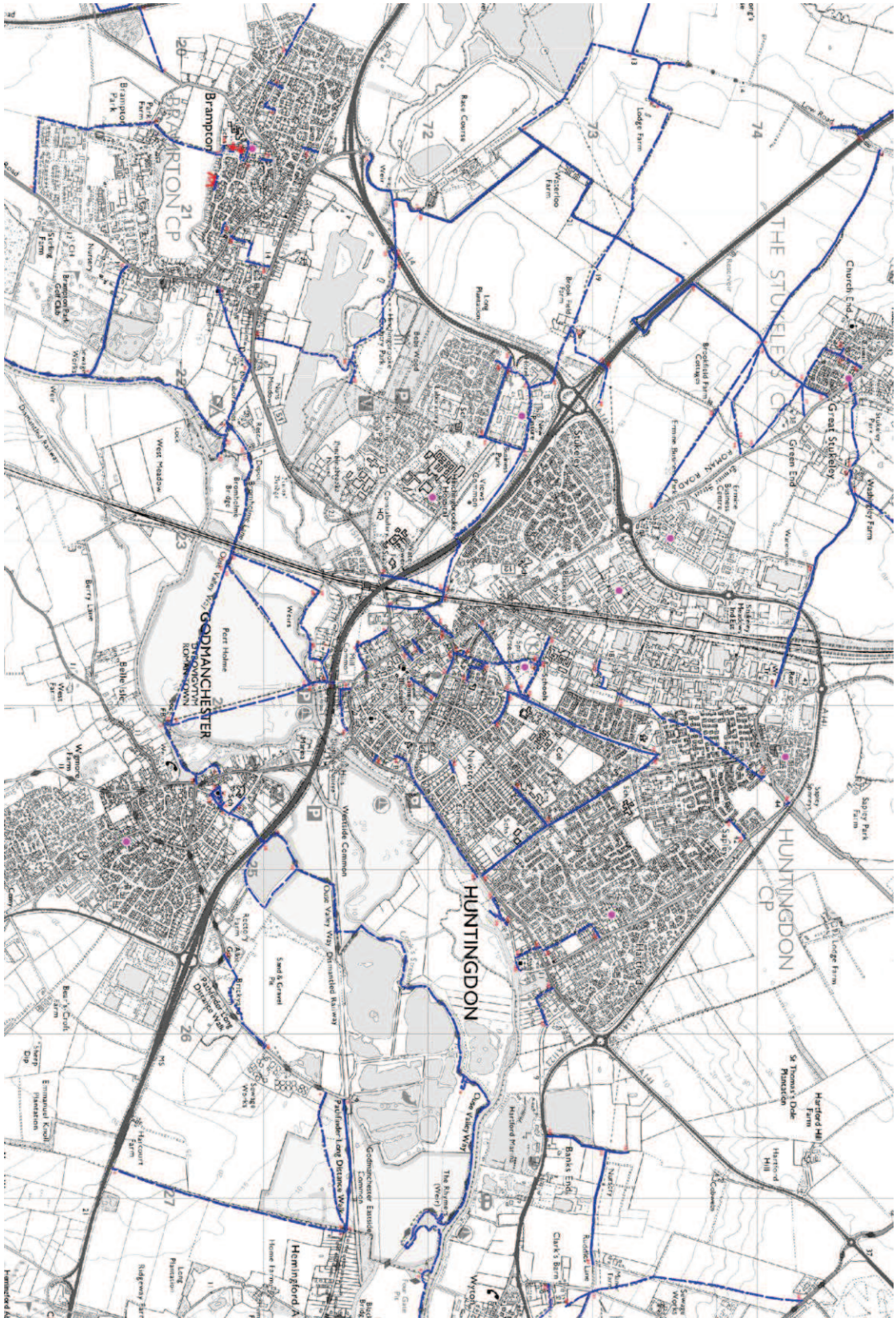
7.2 The strategy will cover Huntingdon from 2014-2026. However, many of the schemes and issues which feature in the action plan are high-level, or dependent on the (presently unknown) outcome of other schemes. Such schemes and issues include the new A14, Alconbury Weald station and the level of development in and around Huntingdon. It is therefore recognised that there will be a need for the Action Plan to be updated over time, as the outcome of these schemes becomes apparent.

7.3 It will be left to Cambridgeshire County Council to decide which committee is responsible for updating the Action Plan, but such a committee will need to comprise of County, District and Parish councillors. In the interim period, the existing Member Steering Group will serve that purpose, with meetings being called when needed. In the event of a significant update of the Action Plan, the strategy should be put to public consultation before being re-adopted by CCC and HDC.

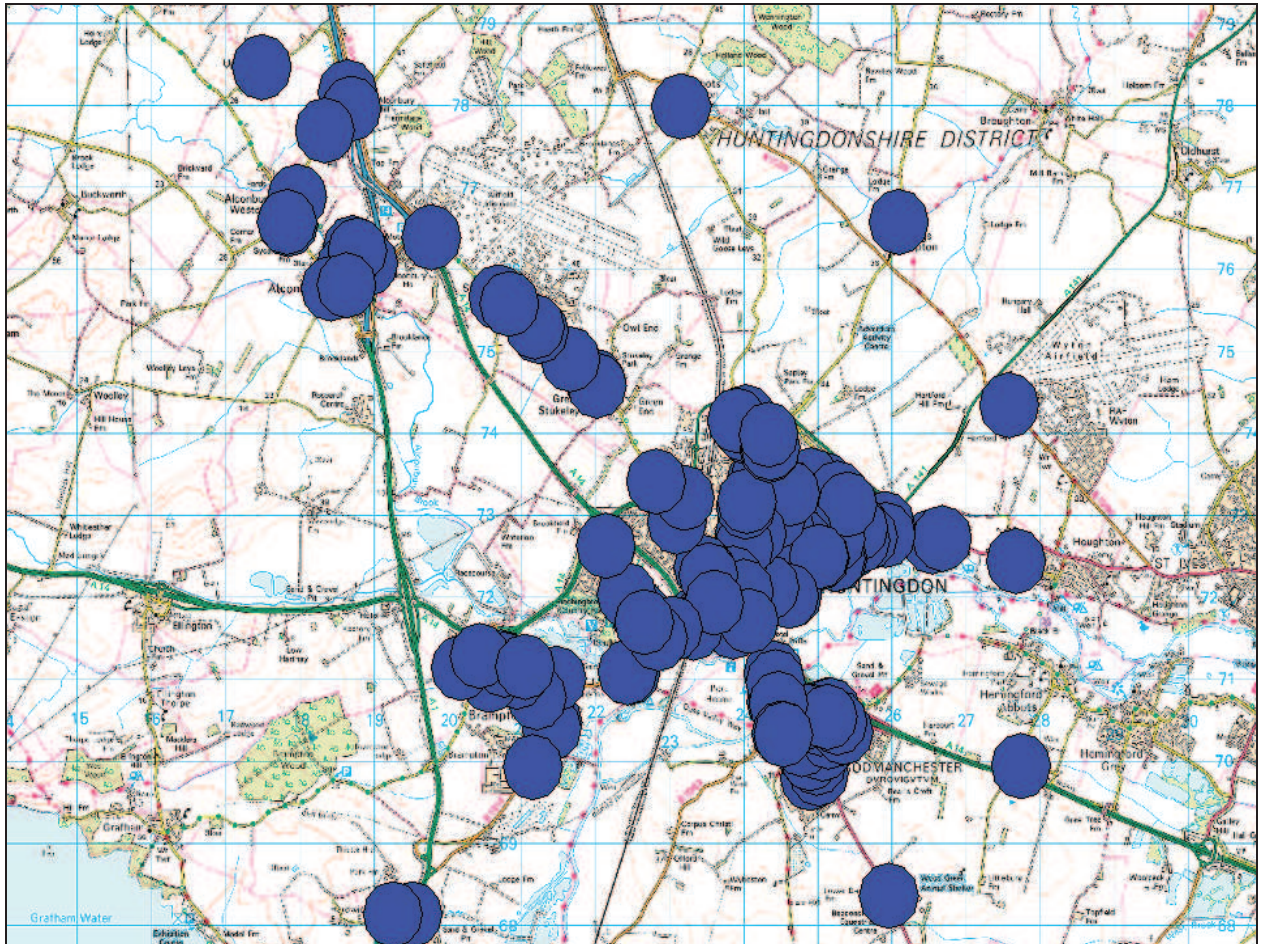


Appendix A – Walking and Cycling Maps of Huntington

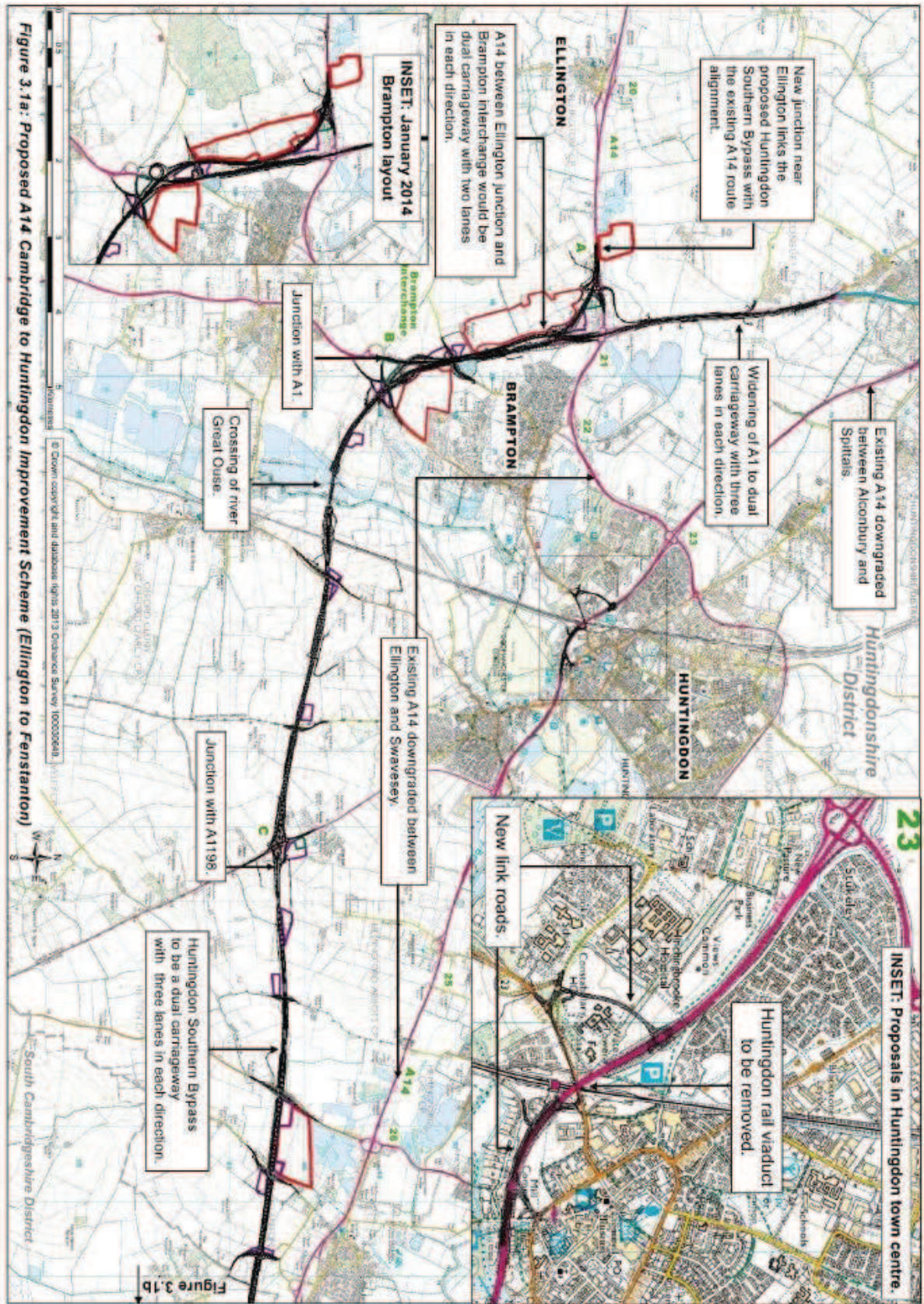




Appendix B – Areas of Huntingdon within 400m of a bus stop.



Appendix C – Diagram of Proposed Highways Agency A14 Scheme around Huntingdon



**Public**  
**Key Decision - No**

## HUNTINGDONSHIRE DISTRICT COUNCIL

<b>Title/Subject Matter:</b>	Review of Risk Management Strategy
<b>Meeting/Date:</b>	Overview & Scrutiny Panel (Economic) – 10 July 2014 Cabinet – 17 July 2014
<b>Executive Portfolio:</b>	Cllr J A Gray
<b>Report by:</b>	Internal Audit & Risk Manager
<b>Ward(s) affected:</b>	All

---

### **Executive Summary:**

In November 2013 Council approved a change to the Cabinet's terms of reference so that they became responsible (from the Corporate Governance Panel) for the approval of the risk management strategy.

The strategy is reviewed annually and this report details the outcome of that review.

Whilst there have been a number of changes arising from the introduction of the new management structure, the two most significant changes are to the explanation that supports the Council's risk appetite and the disestablishment of the Risk Management Group.

COMT are required to review and consider Council's risk appetite each year. The risk appetite is the amount and type of risk that the Council is prepared to seek, accept or tolerate. COMT have decided that no change is required to either the general (high) or the health & safety (low) risk appetite levels.

The Risk Management Group has been meeting since January 2004. It has successfully overseen the introduction of risk management into all areas of the Council. Whilst there will always remain the need to ensure that risks are identified and managed it is considered that the current responsibilities of the group can be transferred to the Governance Risk Working Group and the Internal Audit Service without any significant reduction in risk management oversight or loss of opportunity to embed and develop risk management initiatives.

### **Financial and Legal Implications**

There are no financial or legal implications arising from this report.

### **Recommendation(s):**

It is recommended that the Cabinet:

1. Note that COMT have reviewed the risk appetite and no changes are required; and
2. Approve the Risk Management Strategy.

This page is intentionally left blank

## 1. WHAT IS THIS REPORT ABOUT/PURPOSE?

- 1.1 This report details the outcome of the review of the Risk Management Strategy and requests Cabinet to approve a Strategy that incorporates that changes that have been identified from the review.

## 2. WHY IS THIS REPORT NECESSARY/BACKGROUND

- 2.1 The Risk Management Strategy is reviewed on an annual basis. The Corporate Governance Panel, when reviewing their own effectiveness in September 2013 considered that with the inclusion of risk appetite into the strategy in 2012, that they were no longer the appropriate forum to approve the strategy. Council in accepting this reasoning gave Cabinet the responsibility for adopting the strategy in November 2013.

## 3. CHANGES TO THE STRATEGY

### RISK APPETITE

- 3.1 The previous strategy included the following sentence with regard to risk appetite.

“The Panel has determined the overall risk appetite to be High. In respect of Health & Safety risks, the overall risk appetite is Low.”

It is proposed that the same risk appetite levels remain, but the narrative within the strategy be amended as follows:

“The Cabinet have set the following risk appetite:

In recognising the boundaries that have been established through the risk assessment model, changes that are taking place in local government, the financial pressures that are being faced and the need to be innovative and explore alternative methods of service delivery, we have determined that the Council’s risk appetite to be high.

However we have no appetite for health and safety risks including safeguarding and similar public safety concerns, which we wish to see mitigated to the lowest practical level.”

- 3.2 Whilst no formal illustrative descriptors have been written, in general ‘layman’s’ terms’ the appetite levels are as follows:

#### **Risk appetite = High**

A high risk appetite should be ‘read’ as the Council’s desire that it should *be able to take calculated risks to seize opportunities (innovation) in delivering its Priorities and Outcomes.*

#### **Health & Safety risk appetite = Low**

A low risk appetite should be ‘read’ as the Council’s desire that it should *have low degree of residual risk and a preference for safe service delivery options that only contain the potential for limited reward.*

## RISK MANAGEMENT GROUP

3.3 With the introduction of the Officer Governance Board and associated Working Groups in November 2013, the opportunity has been taken to review the role of the Risk Working Group (RWG) and the Risk Management Group (RMG) to identify any overlap of responsibilities.

3.4 Whilst the terms of reference of the RMG are far more detailed than the RWG, they have similar aims. It is proposed that the responsibilities of the RMG be transferred to the RWG and the Internal Audit Service along the lines outlined in the table below and that the RMG no longer meet.

### Risk Working Group

Assist with the development and review of corporate standards, policy, supporting strategies and guidelines.

Review the Council's risk profile and address common areas of risk.

Arrange meetings with departments to disseminate information and discuss common issues.

Promoting a risk awareness culture within the Council.

### Internal Audit Service

Implementing, monitoring and developing risk management within the terms of the risk management strategy.

Provide Corporate Governance Panel with an annual statement on the effectiveness of risk management and, as and when necessary, reports on specific risk management areas.

Organising and providing training to ensure officers and Members can carry out their responsibilities.

Provide guidance to Members on issues relating to risk and its implications for the Council, as and when requested.

Advising on the minimum levels of risk mitigation.

To robustly challenge the content of the risk register.

Consider and develop guidelines on insurance, including levels of policy excesses and self-insurance.

The RMG's three remaining areas of responsibility will not be assigned to either party, but both will be able to act as and when required, in respect of the following:

- Seek and evaluate advice from other public sector bodies and the private sector on issues related to risk management;
- May initiate review projects, research into and the development of new ideas and products related to risk management; and
- Work with other groups who are dealing with risk management issues in the Council, in particular those relating to community safety and health and safety.

3.3 The changes outlined above have been reflected in the strategy.



**BACKGROUND PAPERS**

None

**CONTACT OFFICER**

David Harwood. Internal Audit & Risk Manager.

Tel No. 01480 388115

This page is intentionally left blank



# **Risk Management Strategy**

**Version11 – July 2014**

## **Introduction**

An effective risk management strategy will ensure the Council maximises its opportunities and manages those threats that may hinder the delivery of its priorities so that the opportunities for continuous improvement are maximised.

Risk therefore needs to be considered at all stages of the management process, from the setting of corporate priorities through to the delivery of the service to the customer. Risk management therefore becomes an integral element of the Council's corporate governance arrangements.

This risk management strategy aims to integrate risk management into the Council's culture and processes and raise awareness amongst all employees and members of the benefits and opportunities that the successful management of risk can bring.

## **Definitions**

**Risk** is the chance or possibility of something happening that will have an adverse impact on the achievement of the Council's objectives.

**Risk management** is the identification, evaluation, control, monitoring and reporting of existing and emerging risks. It applies equally to the opportunities for taking risks as it does to avoiding risks or reducing losses. It is a key part of good management and not simply a compliance exercise.

## **Why is Risk Management important?**

The Council provides a large range of services within an ever changing environment, so there is great potential for risks to arise. Effective risk management will enable the Council to:

- Maximise performance
- Minimise the need to divert funds from priority services
- Encourage creativity
- Minimise losses
- Ensure the Council's reputation is preserved and enhanced
- Reduce insurance premiums

The aim is to manage risk, rather than eliminate it. Too little attention to the control of risk will lead to unnecessary losses and poor performance, while an over zealous approach may stifle creativity and increase the cost of and/or impede service delivery. Successful risk management means getting the balance right.

## **Risk Policy Statement**

Huntingdonshire District Council is committed to the effective management of risk. The Council's ability to deliver services and achieve its business objectives are constantly affected by risk, which the Council recognises as being both positive and negative.

The Council also recognises its legal, moral and fiduciary duties in taking informed decisions about how best to control and minimise the downside of risk, whilst still maximising opportunity and benefiting from positive risks.

The Council will ensure that Members and staff understand their responsibility to identify risks and their possible consequences.

## The Risk Management Process

Risk management is a continuous process that has five key elements:

- The systematic **identification** of risks to which the Council is exposed.
- The **evaluation** of those risks in terms of likelihood and severity.
- The **control** or **mitigation** of the risks, either by reducing the likelihood or severity of adverse events.
- The **arrangements** the Council needs to put into place to deal with the **consequences** of the threats manifesting themselves, e.g. insurance, levels of policy excesses, self-insurance, service recovery planning.
- The on-going **monitoring** and **reporting** of risk, to allow for intended actions to be achieved and losses minimised.

A standard risk management process will be used throughout the Council<sup>1</sup>. This will ensure that risks are considered in the same fashion whether at a project, partnership, corporate or operational level.

Risks faced by the Council can be broadly grouped into two risk categories – corporate or operational.

### Corporate Risks

- Political
- Economic
- Social
- Technological
- Legislative
- Environment
- Competitive
- Customer

### Operational Risks

- Professional
- Legal
- Financial
- Physical
- Contractual
- Information
- Technology
- Environmental

Some risks fall across both categories, in particular those associated with partnerships, projects or cross-cutting service issues, and therefore can't be listed under one area.

Further examples of the risk areas are contained at [Appendix A](#).

All levels of management should be concerned, to varying degrees, with risks in both categories. Corporate risks are likely to affect the medium to longer term priorities of the Council and require longer term planning to be addressed. Operational risks tend to have a more immediate impact and require to be treated in a shorter time frame.

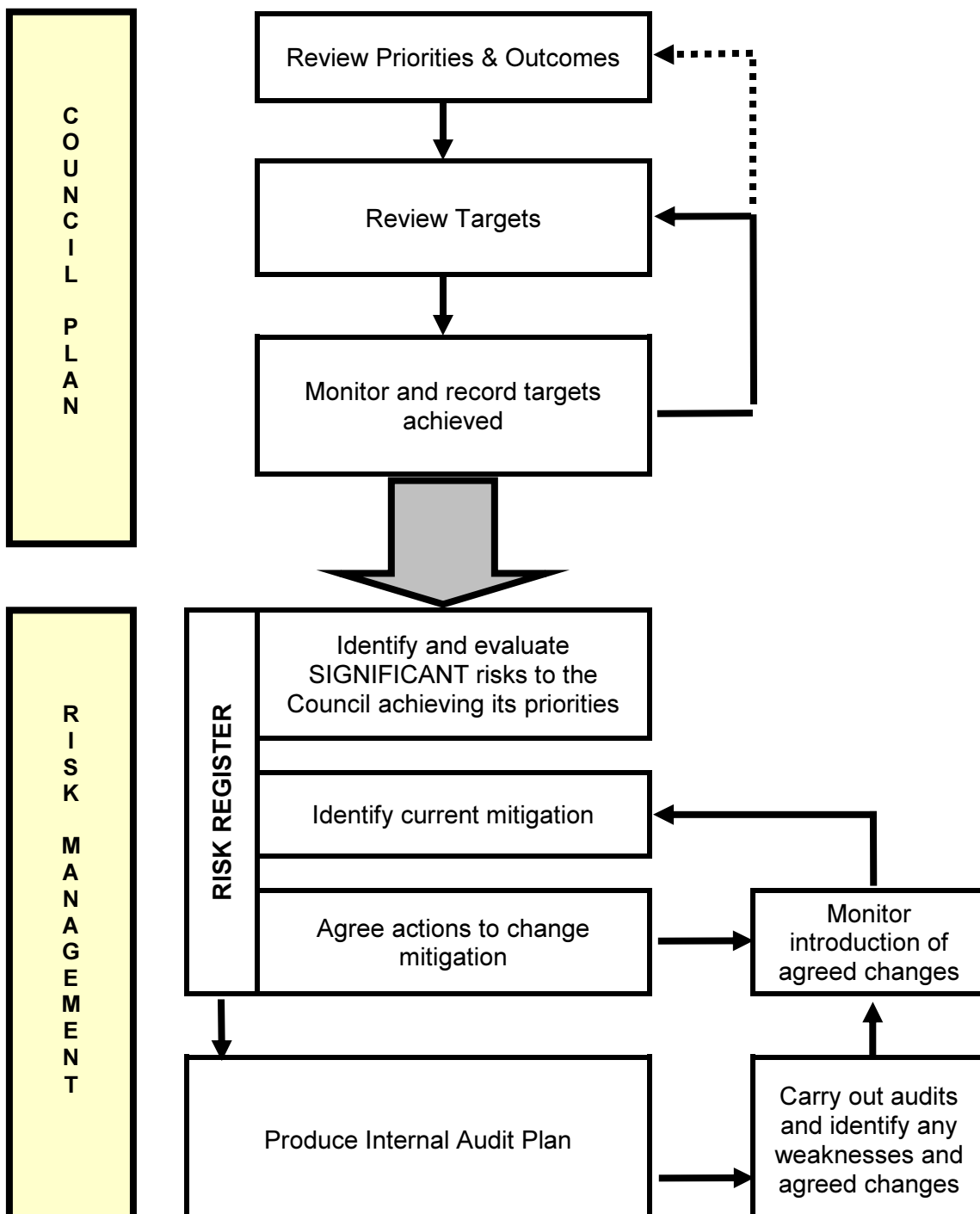
---

<sup>1</sup> For operational reasons, health and safety risks shall be evaluated in accordance with the categories of injury prescribed by the Health and Safety Executive, as contained in Appendix B.

## Developing and Integrating Risk Management

The identification and management of risks needs to be undertaken at all stages of the corporate and service planning process so as to ensure that the risk register contains the significant risks that will affect the Council achieving its priorities. All reports or proposals at officer or member level that deal with changes to services must, where material, refer to the impact of what is being considered on the Council's priorities and targets and be supported by an explicit consideration of the risks, both inherent and mitigated, to that impact being achieved.

The table below explains how risk management processes link into the Council's planning process.



## Risk Appetite

The Cabinet shall determine the Council's risk appetite; that is the risk level that can be tolerated and justified should it be realised. In making this decision they shall consider the risk assessment model and its individual elements, the Council's current circumstances and their responsibilities towards the Council's employees and the wider community and the recommendation of Chief Officers' Management Team.

The Cabinet have set the following risk appetite:

*In recognising the boundaries that have been established through the risk assessment model, changes that are taking place in local government, the financial pressures that are being faced and the need to be innovative and explore alternative methods of service delivery, we have determined that the Council's risk appetite to be high.*

*However we have no appetite for health and safety risks including safeguarding and similar public safety concerns, which we wish to see mitigated to the lowest practical level.*

## Risk Assessment

The risk assessment model is detailed in [Appendix B](#).

The model requires potential risks to be evaluated against a set of pre-determined criteria for likelihood/frequency and impact. Individual risk levels can then be determined by plotting the risks onto a risk matrix. Health and Safety risks will be plotted against the smaller inset matrix.

Likelihood / Frequency	Almost Certain	5	Medium	High	Very High	Very High	Very High
	Likely	4	Medium	High	High	Very High	Very High
	Occasional	3	Low	Medium	High	High	Very High
	Unlikely	2	Low	Low	Medium	High	Very High
	Improbable	1	Low	Low	Medium	High	High
			1	2	3	4	5
			Trivial	Minor	Significant	Major	Critical
			<b>Impact</b>				

Following the plotting of a risk, a decision shall be taken as to how the risk is to be managed. This can be summarised as follows.

Level of Risk	Very High	High	Medium	Low
Level of Concern	Very concerned	Concerned	Uneasy	Content
Appetite: General	Unacceptable	Acceptable	Acceptable	Acceptable
H&S	Unacceptable	Unacceptable	Unacceptable	Acceptable
Consequences	Disastrous impact  If residual risk exceeds risk appetite then	Severe impact.	Detrimental impact on the day to day delivery of services.  Risk monitored by HoS; escalated to COMT if increase in impact or probability.	Relatively light impact.
Responsibility for acceptance of residual risk	Cabinet receive formal risk option form and decide if the risk shall be accepted or avoided.	Risks will be tolerated where single events occur but overall impact of multiple events to be reported to Cabinet.  Monitored 6 monthly by COMT <i>who may determine, by exception, that individual risks shall be further mitigated.</i>		Risk accepted.
Prepare action plan and update Risk Register	Within 6 weeks of the decision to treat the risk.		-----	

### Option Appraisals & Risk Treatment

Before a decision is made on the way the risk is to be treated, the Head of Service who owns the risk, shall carry out an option appraisal. The appraisal shall consider how to deal with the risk on the following basis:

- **Reduce** or treat the risk by controlling the likelihood of the risk occurring or controlling the impact of the consequences if the risk does occur.
- **Avoid** or eliminate the risk by not undertaking the activity that may trigger the risk.
- **Transfer** the risk either totally or in part to others e.g. through insurance.



- **Accept** or tolerate the risk. This option will only be accepted when the ability to take effective action against a risk is limited or the cost of taking action is disproportionate to the potential benefits gained.

The appraisal will consider cost, resources, time and the potential financial and non-financial benefits of each treatment option. Advice from specialist staff shall be taken where appropriate.

Ideally risk treatments should be self-funding. Where this is not the case there will need to be a prioritisation process to ensure that any funding is concentrated first on those items that will be most beneficial to the achievement of the Council's priorities.

- **Action Plans**

The results of the option appraisal shall be recorded by the appropriate Head of Service on a risk treatment option form ([Appendix C](#)) within 4 weeks of the risk having been recorded in the risk register. The form shall identify the risk, the current control environment, control actions to be introduced, the officer responsible and the timescales for implementation.

The option appraisal will be reviewed and challenged by the Internal Audit & Risk Manager prior to its submission and consideration by Cabinet or the Chief Officers Management Team who shall decide what further action, if any, is required to address the risk issue raised. The Head of Service shall update the risk register and put in place procedures to introduce the agreed actions.

## **Roles and Responsibilities**

Everyone in the Council is involved in risk management and should be aware of their responsibilities in identifying and managing risk.

### **Council, Cabinet, Committees & Panels**

- To ensure that risk management implications are considered when making decisions.

### **Cabinet**

- To be responsible for ensuring effective risk management procedures are in place across the Council and approving the risk management strategy
- To appoint a risk management champion.
- To determine the Council's risk appetite annually and review the risk assessment model to ensure it continues to reflect the requirements of the Council.
- To receive reports and decide upon the action to be taken for all mitigated risks that exceed the Council's risk appetite or have the potential to harm its reputation or the continuity of services.

### **Corporate Governance Panel**

- To receive regular updates on risk management and consider any governance issues arising.

### **Chief Officers' Management Team**

- To ensure effective risk management throughout the Council in accordance with the risk management strategy.
- To make recommendations at least once a year to the Cabinet on the Council's risk appetite.
- To ensure that Members are advised of the risk management implications of decisions.
- To consider every 3 months all new risk entries on the risk register.
- To prioritise risk treatments and all treatments requiring MTP funding.

### **Heads of Service**

- Ensuring that effective procedures are in place to manage the risks affecting their services.
- Maintain a risk register that identifies and scores risks, updating it promptly with any perceived new risks or opportunities or failures of existing control measures.
- Ensure that risks relating to significant partnerships are identified and effectively managed, within the partnership and at service level.
- To report all new risks or significant changes to risk entries to COMT every 3 months.
- To undertake option appraisals for risks within their ownership and prepare action plans for risks that are to be treated further.
- To update at least once every six months assurance on those controls that manage risks recorded on the risk register.
- Balancing an acceptable level of operational risk against the achievement of service plans, project objectives and business opportunities.

### **Risk Working Group (reporting to the Governance Board)**

- To identify and resolve any risks associated with compliance with the Council's agreed rules, procedures and processes.

### **Internal Audit & Risk Management Section**

- To develop the culture of risk management throughout the Council.
- To assist managers in identifying and analysing the risks that they encounter and the formation of action plans to address outstanding issues.
- To report as necessary to the Cabinet, Corporate Governance Panel or COMT on risk management issues.
- To identify best practice and consider its introduction within the Council.
- To provide advice and guidance on systems to mitigate risk.

### **Health and Safety**

- All Elected Members and employees are responsible for taking care of their own and their colleagues/visitors health and safety at all times. They are responsible for the identification and treatment of hazards as described in the Health and Safety Policy – Organisation & Responsibilities.

### **Employees**

- To co-operate with management and colleagues in matters relating to the mitigation of risk.
- To promptly inform the appropriate manager of any risks they become aware of.

## Categories of Risk

The risk categories<sup>2</sup> provide a framework for identifying and categorising a broad range of risks facing the Council and its services. Each category cannot be considered in isolation, as risks identified in one category may have consequences on activities within another.

### Corporate Risks

Those risks that may be potentially damaging to the achievement of the Council's objectives.

#### Political

---

Associated with failure to deliver either local or central government policy, or to meet electoral commitments.

- Wrong strategic priorities
- Not meeting Government agenda
- Decisions based on incomplete or faulty information
- Too slow to innovate/modernise
- Unfulfilled promises to electorate
- Community planning oversights/errors

#### Economic

---

Affecting the ability of the Council to meet its financial commitments. These include internal budgetary pressures, inadequate insurance cover, external level economic changes (e.g. interest rates, inflation etc), or the consequences of proposed investment decisions.

- General /Regional economic problems
- High cost of capital
- Treasury risk
- Missed business and service opportunities

#### Social

---

Relating to the effects of changes in demographic, residential or socio-economic trends on the Council's ability to deliver its objectives.

- Failing to meet the needs of disadvantaged communities
- Impact of demographic change
- Failures in partnership working
- Problems in delivering life-long learning
- Crime and disorder

#### Technological

---

Associated with the capacity of the Council to deal with the pace / scale of technological change, or its ability to use technology to address changing demands. They may also include the consequences of internal technological failures on the Council's ability to deliver its objectives.

- Obsolescence of technology
- Hacking or corruption of data
- Breach of confidentiality
- Failure in communications

#### Legislative

---

Associated with current or potential changes in national or European law.

- Inadequate response to new legislation
- Intervention by regulatory bodies and inspectorates
- Judicial review
- Human Rights Act breaches

<sup>2</sup> Source: Accounts Commission for Scotland

Environment

---

Relating to the environmental consequences of progressing the Council's strategic objectives (e.g. tackling climate change, using resources efficiently and protecting and improving the environment).

- Reduce Co2 emissions
- Adapt to climate change
- Reduce waste and use resources wisely
- Impact of planning and transportation policies
- Protect biodiversity and green space

Competitive

---

Affecting the competitiveness of the service (in terms of cost or quality) and / or its ability to deliver Best Value.

- Takeover of services by governmental agencies
- Failure to show best value
- Failure of bids for government funds

Customer

---

Associated with failure to meet the current and changing needs and expectations of customers and citizens.

- Lack of appropriate consultation
- Bad public and media relations

## Operational Risks

Those risks that managers and employees may encounter in the day-to-day provision of services.

### Professional

---

Associated with the particular nature of each profession (e.g. Housing service concerns as to the welfare of homeless people).

- Inefficient/ineffective management processes
- Inability to implement change
- Lack of control over changes to service provision
- Inadequate consultation with service users
- Failure to communicate effectively with employees
- Lack of business continuity plan
- Non-achievement of Best Value
- Bad management of partnership working/shared services
- Failure to manage and retain service contracts
- Poor management of externally funded projects

### Legal

---

Related to possible breaches of legislation.

- Not meeting statutory duties/deadlines
- Failure to comply with European directives on procurement of works, supplies and services
- Breach of confidentiality/Data Protection Act
- Failure to implement legislative change
- Misinterpretation of legislation
- Exposure to liability claims e.g. motor accidents, wrongful advice

### Financial

---

Associated with financial planning and control and the adequacy of insurance arrangements.

- Failure of major project(s)
- Inefficient/ineffective processing of documents
- Missed opportunities for income/funding/grants
- Inadequate insurance cover
- Failure to prioritise, allocate appropriate budgets and monitor
- Inadequate control over expenditure
- Inadequate control over income

### Physical

---

Related to fire, security, accident prevention and health and safety (e.g. hazards / risks associated with buildings, vehicles, plant and equipment, etc).

- Violence and Aggression
- Non compliance with health and safety legislation
- Injury caused by e.g. slips, trips, stress
- Loss of intangible assets
- Loss of physical assets from e.g. theft, fire, terrorism
- Damage to assets from e.g. vandalism, water damage
- Failure to maintain and upkeep land and property

### Contractual

---

Associated with the failure of contractors to deliver services or products to the agreed cost and specification.

- Non-compliance with procurement policies
- Over reliance on key suppliers/contractors
- Failure of outsourced provider to deliver
- Failure to monitor contractor
- Poor selection of contractor
- Poor contract specification, deficiencies, errors
- Inadequate contract terms & conditions
- Quality issues

### Information

---

Associated with making decisions based on information that is flawed in some way.

- Inadequate business processes
- Poor reporting lines/processes
- Accounting system failure
- Unreliable accounting records

### Technology

---

Relating to reliance on operational equipment (e.g. IT systems or equipment and machinery).

- Failure of big technology-related project
- Crash of IT systems affecting service delivery
- Lack of disaster recovery plans
- Breach of security of networks and data
- Failure to comply with IT Security Policy
- Bad management of intranets and web sites

### Environmental

---

Relating to pollution, noise or energy efficiency of ongoing service operation.

- Reduce Co2 emissions through promotion of energy efficiency
- Crime and Disorder Act implications
- Incorrect storage/disposal of waste
- Reduce travel and emissions
- Promote water efficiency
- Promote recycling
- Protect and improve biodiversity and green space projects
- Encourage more sustainable purchasing

### Human Resources


---

Associated with staffing issues (e.g. recruitment / retention, sickness management, change management, stress related risk analysis).

- Capacity issues
- Over reliance on key officers
- Failure to recruit/retain qualified staff
- Lack of employee motivation/efficiency
- Failure to comply with employment law
- Poor recruitment & selection processes
- Lack of succession planning
- Lack of training

## RISK ASSESSMENT MODEL

### Likelihood / Frequency

			Alternatively this could be expressed as likely to happen within the next:	
<b>5 = Almost Certain</b>	Will definitely occur, possibly frequently.	Month		
<b>4 = Likely</b>	Is likely to occur, but not persistently.	Year		
<b>3 = Occasional</b>	May occur only occasionally.	3 years		
<b>2 = Unlikely</b>	Do not expect it to happen but it is possible.	10 years		
<b>1 = Improbable</b>	Can't believe that this will ever happen, but it may occur in exceptional circumstances.	20 years		

When considering Health & Safety related risks, the likelihood should be expressed as being likely to happen within the next:

<b>4 = Likely</b>	Monthly	Further advice on assessing Health & Safety risks* can be obtained from the Health & Safety Advisor.
<b>3 = Occasional</b>	Year	
<b>2 = Unlikely</b>	5 years	

### Impact

Risks will be evaluated against the following scale. If a risk meets conditions for more than one category, a judgement will need to be made as to which level is the most appropriate. For example, if a particular health and safety risk was significant, could result in minor short-term adverse publicity in the local media but had only a trivial financial impact, it might still be categorised as significant.

**1 = trivial** event or loss, which is likely to:

- cause minor disruption to service delivery on one or two consecutive days, not noticeable to customers
- increase the Council's net cost over the 5 year MTP period by £50,000 or less.
- be managed with no reporting in the local media
- cause localised (one or two streets) environmental or social impact

**2 = minor** event or loss, which is likely to:

- cause minor, noticeable disruption to service delivery on one or two consecutive days
- increase the Council's net cost over the 5 year MTP period by more than £50,000 but less than £100,000.

- result in minor short-term (up to a fortnight) adverse publicity in the local media
- \* be a Health and Safety concern that results in an injury but little lost time (e.g. less than 3 days off work)
- have a short term effect on the environment i.e. noise, fumes, odour, dust emissions etc., but with no lasting detrimental impact

**3 = significant** event or loss, which is likely to:

- cause disruption for between one and four weeks to the delivery of a specific service which can be managed under normal circumstances
- affect service delivery in the longer term
- increase the Council's net cost over the 5 year MTP period by more than £100,000 but less than £250,000.
- result in significant adverse publicity in the national or local media
- \* be a Health and Safety concern that results in more than 3 days off work or is a major injury, dangerous occurrence or disease that is required to be reported to the H&S Executive in accordance with RIDDOR.
- has a short term local effect on the environment, or a social impact, that requires remedial action.

**4 = major** event or loss, which is likely to:

- have an immediate impact on the majority of services provided or a specific service within one area, so that it requires Managing Director involvement.
- increase the Council's net cost over the 5 year MTP period by more than £250,000 but less than £500,000.
- raise concerns about the corporate governance of the authority and / or the achievement of the Corporate Plan
- cause sustained adverse publicity in the national media
- significantly affect the local reputation of the Council both in the long and short term
- \* results in the fatality of an employee or any other person
- have a long term detrimental environmental or social impact e.g. chronic and / or significant discharge of pollutant

**5 = critical** event or loss, which is likely to:

- have an immediate impact on the Council's established routines and its ability to provide any services, and cause a total shutdown of operations.
- increase the Council's net cost over the 5 year MTP period by more than £500,000.
- have an adverse impact on the national reputation of the Council both in the long and short term
- have a detrimental impact on the environment and the community in the long term e.g. catastrophic and / or extensive discharge of persistent hazardous pollutant



## Risk Treatment Option Form

Risk Treatment – Action Plan				
Description of risk from register:	Risk ID No:	Current residual risk score: Likelihood x Impact		
Controls already in place as listed on the risk register:				
Are these controls operating effectively? Yes / No				
Risk Action Plan (All actions listed in priority order)				
Proposed actions to reduce risk using existing resources	New residual risk score <sup>3</sup>			Extra resources required <sup>4</sup>
	L	I		
a.				
b.				
c.				
Actions requiring additional resources				
1.				
2.				
3.				
4.				
Decision				
Agreed Option:	Implementation Date		Risk Owner	
Decision taken by:		on:		

<sup>3</sup> **New Residual Risk Score:** after the action has been introduced

<sup>4</sup> **Extra Resources:** only complete if extra resources will be required to allow the proposed action to be introduced e.g. financial costs and staff time

Remember, when considering treatment options that the Council's aim is to manage risk rather than eliminate it completely – successful risk management is about improving risk taking activities whilst minimising the frequency of the event occurring.

Issues that should be considered when making the risk treatment decision are listed below.

Administration	<p>Is the option easy to implement?  Will the option be neglected because it is difficult to implement?  Do staff have sufficient expertise to introduce the option?</p>
Continuity of effects	<p>Will the effects of the risk treatment option be long term/continuous or short term?  If short term, when will further risk treatments be needed?  Does the risk need to be treated at all as it will 'disappear' in the short term (e.g. a project it refers to will be completed or in the next three months)</p>
Cost effectiveness	<p><i>Costs need to be estimated accurately as it's the base against which cost effectiveness is measured.</i></p> <p>Can the cost of implementing further control be justified compared to the risk reduction benefits expected?  What financial loss is to be expected if no action is taken?  Could the same results be achieved at lower cost by other means?</p> <p>Will running costs go up or down?  What capital investment will be needed?  What other costs will there be?</p>
Benefits	<p>What will happen to service levels?  What will happen to service quality?  What additional benefits or risk reductions will occur in other areas?  Can other controls in place be amended to deal with this risk?  How will you evaluate this option to see if it is reducing the identified risk?</p>
Objectives	<p>Will reducing risk advance the Council's overall objectives?  What will be the economic and social impacts?  What will be the impact on the environment of leaving the risk as it is?</p>
Regulatory	<p>Complying with laws and regulations is not an option.</p> <p>Does the lack of treating the risk (or the current method of control) breach any laws or regulatory requirement?  Is the treatment option proposed, including its cost, totally disproportionate to the risk?</p>
Risk creation	<p>What new risks will be created from introducing the option?</p>

**Public**  
**Key Decision - Yes**

## HUNTINGDONSHIRE DISTRICT COUNCIL

**Title/Subject Matter:** A Tree Strategy for Huntingdonshire

**Meeting/Date:** COMT - July 7<sup>th</sup> 2014  
Overview and Scrutiny (Env Well Being) - 15<sup>th</sup> July 2014  
Cabinet - 17<sup>th</sup> July 2014

**Executive Portfolio:** Cllr Doug Dew, Executive Councillor for Strategic Planning and Housing and Cllr Darren Tysoe, Executive Councillor for Operations & Environment

**Report by:** Brian Ogden – Arboricultural Officer, Planning Services

**Ward(s) affected:** All

---

### **Executive Summary:**

In 2010 members of the Overview and Scrutiny Panel (Environmental Well-Being) resolved to produce and adopt a comprehensive tree strategy for the whole of Huntingdonshire. The aim of the strategy is to provide a solid framework for protection, maintenance and enhancement of trees within the District of Huntingdonshire. Management, care, and planting of trees in the District is unplanned and fragmented, with varied standards of care from very good to very poor. The strategy has been developed to be a useful and practical working document, not a mission statement, to provide a framework with achievable, clear, measurable targets for the incremental long term improvement to the tree population in Huntingdonshire.

### **Recommendation(s):**

1. That the Overview and Scrutiny [Environmental Well Being] Panel endorses the Tree Strategy and recommend that it be adopted by Cabinet.
2. That Cabinet adopts the Tree Strategy by Cabinet, subject to any minor amendments agreed between the Head of Development and the relevant Executive Councillors
3. That Cabinet authorises the Corporate Director (Delivery) to proceed with implementation of the Action Plan 2015-2020.



## **1. WHAT IS THIS REPORT ABOUT/PURPOSE?**

- 1.1 This report seeks the endorsement and adoption of the Tree Strategy by Cabinet, and also for the Authorisation of the Corporate Director – Delivery to proceed with implementation of the Action Plan 2015-2020.

## **2. BACKGROUND**

- 2.1 Since 2011 work has been progressing to develop a comprehensive tree Strategy for the whole of Huntingdonshire. It is recognised that trees are being lost faster than they are being planted, and that tree management, care, and planting is fragmented and standards vary. The aim of the Strategy is simple, to protect and care for the trees we have, and to provide a framework for planting more trees. The Strategy has been developed to be a working document, and not just a mission statement. The Strategy provides a real framework with clear measurable targets that will provide incremental, long term improvement to the valuable tree resource in Huntingdonshire.
- 2.2 The Strategy sets out the Council's approach to tree care management, risk management, and statutory planning requirements, and through a five year action plan determines the direction for all of HDC's tree related management and projects.
- 2.3 The Tree Strategy for Huntingdonshire 2015 to 2020 also provides operational standards for the care and management of trees and helpful best practice guidance for other tree owners, such as Parish and Town Council's and Schools on tree risk management practices, and quality of tree work.

## **3. ANALYSIS OF THE STRATEGY**

- 3.1 To meet the aim of providing a framework to protect, maintain and enhance trees within Huntingdonshire, the Strategy has three main parts:

### *1. Action Plan*

Key aims and objectives for trees in the District and a five-year plan for the work that needs to be carried out to deliver these aims and objectives.

### *2. Tree Policies*

The guiding principles on how trees in the District will be protected and cared for, and how new tree planting will be promoted.

### *3. Tree Guidance Notes*

Guidance notes setting out operational standards, and outlining how management decisions are made. These are stand alone documents that will be updated to reflect best practice and legislative amendments as they change, and additional documents may be added if required. The Guidance notes include; a specification for work to trees on Council land, a guide on how the Council responds to customer requests for work to trees, a Supplementary Planning document for Trees and Development, a method for the Evaluation of Trees for Tree Preservation Orders, a Policy for dealing with Planning Enforcement, a Tree Risk Management policy, a practical guide to Tree Risk management for public bodies such as Parish Councils, Schools etc, a guide for dealing with insurance claims against the Council, and a guide for dealing with Ash Dieback.

- 3.2 The Tree Strategy is a practical working document. It will provide an up to date point of reference for Council Officers, Council Members, Policy Makers, and

for other large and small land and tree owners, professional and non-professional.

#### **4. COMMENTS OF OVERVIEW & SCRUTINY PANEL**

4.1 To be circulated separately.

#### **5. WHAT ACTIONS WILL BE TAKEN/TIMETABLE FOR IMPLEMENTATION**

5.1 The next steps in relation to the adoption and implementation of the Tree Strategy will include final engagement and consultation with Council departments/services. This action will ensure that the Council has a consistent approach to the care, management of, and advice provided for trees throughout the District.

5.2 Following this final consultation Publication of the Tree Strategy is proposed for January 2015, where it will be made available as an 'online' resource to allow access to all Guidance documents, and external links. The implementation of the Strategy 2015-2020 is detailed in part one the Action Plan.

5.3 Officers will be carrying out a yearly review of the Tree Strategy with clear performance indicators, and because of this the Tree Strategy is a dynamic document which can respond to changes in the District, new legislation and emerging industry best practice. A detailed analysis and review will take place every five years.

#### **6. LINK TO THE CORPORATE PLAN**

6.1 The adoption and implementation of the Tree Strategy and its initial five year action plan links with Corporate Plan themes to enable sustainable growth, to improve the quality of life in Huntingdonshire, and working with our Communities.

#### **7. LEGAL IMPLICATIONS**

7.1 The Strategy has been developed to improve and reduce the risks of insurance claims against the Council, to improve and assist Officers with the day to day decision making process, and to strengthen and provide a consistent approach to the Council's position regarding trees and development, and tree protection. There will be many improvements to the Council's procedures by the adoption and implementation of the Strategy, the most important of which are:-

7.2 The move from unplanned to planned management of trees will not only improve the valuable tree resource in the district, it will reduce the risk of insurance claims, allow for a better defence of any spurious claims, and may also reduce insurance premiums.

7.3 The introduction of an adopted method of evaluation of trees for protection will ensure any legal challenges against newly made Tree Preservation Orders are less likely to be successful.

7.4 The introduction of improved procedures for planning related tree offences should lead to more effective and efficient use of resources, and reductions in planning contraventions.

- 7.5 At a later date, once the overall Tree Strategy is adopted, it is intended that “Trees and Development”, guidance note 3, be adopted as a Supplementary Planning Document. This will give more coherent, consistent, and sound support to our position on the retention, protection, and care of trees during any development in the District. This will be subject to the normal statutory consultation used for the production of any planning document.
- 7.6 The adoption of a Tree Risk Management System allows Officers to make defensible decisions and allow the confident retention of trees without fear of undue legal challenge, and give the Council a solid base for defending any spurious insurance claims.
- 7.7 Providing best practice tree risk advice to public and private bodies will reduce the risk of harm to the public.

## **8. RESOURCE IMPLICATIONS**

- 8.1 Resource implications of the adoption and implementation of the Tree Strategy have been considered and are listed in Part 2 of the Strategy “The Five Year Action Plan”. The Strategy has been developed so as not to require any additional implementation resources. While the Strategy is not likely to result in any resource savings, if implemented it will enhance the provision of an effective service, as well as improving the tree resource in our area.

## **9. OTHER IMPLICATIONS**

- 9.1 The Tree Strategy will enable the service areas that have responsibilities for trees to work more effectively together. These include Planning, Operations, Countryside, Legal, and Finance.

## **10. REASONS FOR THE RECOMMENDED DECISIONS**

- 10.1 The adoption of this Strategy and its policies, and the implementation of the action plan will improve the protection of trees in the District, improve the standard of the care of trees in the District and will increase overall tree cover in the District. The Tree Strategy provides a much needed framework for the protection, maintenance and enhancement of trees within Huntingdonshire, and provided a framework for a plentiful, healthy and attractive tree population that is managed and maintained to a high standard for the benefit of all. The adoption of this strategy and its supporting documents will ensure that all matters relating to the management of Council trees are dealt with in a co-ordinated and accountable manner, based on good practice which will raise tree management standards.

## **11. LIST OF APPENDICES INCLUDED**

Appendix 1 – Draft ‘Tree Strategy for Huntingdonshire’

### **CONTACT OFFICER**

Enquiries about this report to **Brian Ogden, Arboricultural Officer**, Planning Services  
Tel No. 01480 388437

This page is intentionally left blank



# **A TREE STRATEGY FOR HUNTINGDONSHIRE**

**The following document is still in draft form. Amendments are expected before the Strategy is finalised for publication.**





**A Tree Strategy for  
Huntingdonshire**



# Foreword





**Foreword by Councillor Douglas Dew, Executive Councillor for Strategic Planning & Housing:**

Huntingdonshire has a varied historic landscape of 350 square miles, with 4 market towns and nearly 100 villages, all within an expanse of attractive open countryside, farmland, and woodland.

Trees play an important role in the rural and urban landscapes of Huntingdonshire, improving the quality of life in many ways. They make a great contribution to our rural and urban areas, adding great beauty and character and creating a sense of place. They enhance and compliment the built environment by providing screening, focal points, privacy and perspective. Those in parks and gardens bring nature into the hearts of our towns. Streets planted with trees look better, and they also provide valuable wildlife corridors connecting open spaces.

Trees are the largest and oldest living things in the environment. Trees and woodlands are dominant landscape features, and collectively they form one of Huntingdonshire's finest features.

We need to protect our trees and care for them properly. We also need to make sure we plant new trees to replace those that we have to remove, so that future generations can derive the same enjoyment and benefits from trees that we do.

This strategy sets out how the Council will do this over the coming years. We aim to have more and better trees than we have at the moment, in an attractive environment which will help make Huntingdonshire a better place to live, work, study and spend leisure time.





# Contents

## INTRODUCTION

Purpose of the Tree Strategy  
The case for trees  
Overview of the District's tree stock  
Key tree issues in Huntingdonshire

## 1.0 ACTION PLAN

- 1.1 5 Year Action Plan for delivery of the aims of the Tree Strategy
- 1.2 Key aims and objectives
- 1.3 Tree Strategy Action Plan – 2014 – 2019
- 1.4 Monitoring and reviewing procedures
- 1.5 Community involvement

## 2.0 TREE POLICIES

- 2.1 Policy context
- 2.2 District Tree Policies
  - Tree protection policies
  - Tree care policies
  - Tree planting policies

## 3.0 TREE GUIDANCE NOTES

- 3.1 Guidance Note 1, Guidance for Works to Trees
- 3.2 Guidance Note 2, Guidance for Tree Management
- 3.3 Guidance Note 3, Guidance for Trees and Development (a forthcoming SPD)
- 3.4 Guidance Note 4, The Evaluation of Trees for Protection with a TPO
- 3.5 Guidance Note 5, Planning Tree Enforcement Policy
- 3.6 Guidance Note 6, Tree Risk Management
- 3.7 Guidance Note 7, Advice for other public bodies, Parish Councils, schools
- 3.8 Guidance Note 8, Management of claims arising from root damage
- 3.9 Guidance Note 9, Information for the General Public from the East Anglian Tree and Landscape Officers Group, Ash Dieback (*Chalara fraxinea*)



# 1.0 Introduction

- 1.1 Purpose of the Tree Strategy
- 1.2 The case for trees
- 1.3 Overview of the District's tree stock
- 1.4 Key tree issues in Huntingdonshire





## Introduction

### Purpose of the Tree Strategy

Most people agree that trees are a good thing, and yet we continually see them felled for development, damaged and otherwise neglected, both on public and private land.

We need to protect our trees and care for them properly. We also need to make sure we pass on a legacy of an attractive and healthy tree population for future generations, by ensuring that we plant new trees to replace those that have died or been removed.

Huntingdonshire District Council (HDC) has a key role to play in the care and protection of existing trees and planting of new trees in the District. As well as looking after trees and woodlands on Council-owned land and protecting trees on private land, HDC has a role in raising the awareness of the importance of trees and influencing their positive management, by acting as an example of best practice and by providing information about tree management that we would like to see adopted by other public and private sector agencies within Huntingdonshire.

The action plan, policies and guidance within this strategy provide the Council with a framework to manage its own tree operations.

### **In very simple terms, the strategy aims to:**

Protect the trees of Huntingdonshire, through the use of sustainable management techniques.

Care for the trees of Huntingdonshire, by practicing and promoting good tree care.

Plant more trees in Huntingdonshire, by carrying out and promoting appropriate planting of new trees.

## **The Tree Strategy has three parts:**

### **1 Action Plan**

Key aims and objectives for trees in the District and a five-year plan for the work that needs to be carried out to deliver these.

### **2 Tree Policies**

The guiding principles on how trees in the District will be protected and cared for, and how new tree planting will be promoted.

### **3 Tree Guidance Notes**

Guidance notes setting out operational standards, and outlining how management decisions are made. These documents will be updated to reflect best practice and legislative amendments as they change.



The aims of the guidance notes, within Part 3 of this document, are to provide information and advice on the management and care of trees. These documents have principally been written for HDC officers who deal with trees, but it is hoped that they will also be helpful to elected Members and to anyone else who would like to understand what sort of tree work is being carried out, the circumstances when it is necessary and why. It is intended that the detailed policies and guidance will also be of interest to private tree owners and contractors carrying out tree, hedging and woodland operations and to developers considering new development in the District.





## Map of Huntingdonshire



## The case for trees

Trees are a vital part of our natural life support system; cleaning the air we breathe, moderating climatic extremes and contributing to the health and well being of the community. They are without doubt the most significant features in many landscapes and also provide a perfect habitat for many other species. For hundreds of years trees have been cultivated not just for timber, food, shelter and medicine but simply for their intrinsic beauty. They are a part of our history and culture and have been worshipped, celebrated and revered in myth and folklore. The many benefits of trees are broadly summarised below:



*Holme Fen birch wood*

## Quality of Life

Trees are important to the quality of life and have numerous social benefits. They provide a sense of place, history, establishment and continuity. Research shows that trees are associated with enhancing the quality of life through stress relief, improving mental health and a sense of well being. Trees in public spaces provide the opportunities for experiencing these qualities through outdoor activities or by direct public involvement in planting and caring for trees. They also provide a focus for environmental education and raising awareness of the benefits, value and role of trees in the environment, with green and outdoor classrooms enhancing learning opportunities.



*St Neots, Market Square*



## Amenity

Many people appreciate the intrinsic beauty of trees and their subtle variations through the seasons, but the intrinsic amenity value of trees and how they can strongly influence the way a place feels and how it is used is often over looked. The amenity value of trees includes providing contact with the natural environment for those without daily contact with green space



*Chestnut Walk, Hinchingsbrooke Country Park*

Mature trees play an important role in the character of historic townscape areas including Conservation Areas and complement the built environment. They instill a sense of place by creating an attractive and distinctive environment; often contributing to it by screening unsightly views. When allowed to grow to maturity, they provide a scale that contributes to the overall sense of history, establishment and continuity of a given place.



*Honey Hill, Fenstanton*

Trees are also important landscape elements in the open countryside and around towns and villages. They provide historic continuity by living for centuries, offering a link to past events and historic periods. Within urban areas they often form an important townscape feature, providing identity, orientation and structure to our urban areas and by introducing organic shapes and colours and seasonal change.



*Mature lime trees retained at Rowley Arts Centre*

## Biodiversity

Trees and woodlands are an integral part of the ecosystem providing habitats for many species, some of which are completely dependent on them. Trees are used by birds and bats for nesting and roosting and the fruit and seed produced by trees provides a sustainable food source for various animals and birds. Invertebrates, lichens, moss, fungi and also ground fauna such as bluebells and other woodland species are also dependent on trees. Older and veteran trees are particularly important for biodiversity providing unique and increasingly rare habitats for many specialised species. Dead wood is also important for biodiversity as it can provide a variety of important habitats either as dead branches and decay within a living tree, as a standing dead tree or on the ground.



*Robinia* spp. with Chicken of the Woods fungus (*Laetiporus sulphureus*)

## Improving air quality and mitigating climate change

Trees produce the oxygen that we breathe and absorb carbon dioxide, the greenhouse gas, and store it within their wood. They also help to improve air quality by trapping particulates on their leaves and absorbing harmful gases. Woodlands and dense groups of trees can also be effective at reducing noise pollution. In addition, trees can positively affect the local climate by providing shade and shelter from wind and sun, and research has shown that trees can reduce the energy needed to heat or cool properties if they are positioned to provide shade or shelter. Trees within porous surfaces also help to reduce flash flooding by intercepting rainfall and slowing or reducing run off. With a growing understanding of climate change issues and the need to become more fuel efficient, trees will have an increasingly important role to play in this area.



Roadside planting





## Financial value of trees

Trees bring economic value in a variety of ways including;

- Producing products and by-products e.g. timber, wood chip, charcoal, compost and mulch, which can be created and sold to generate income
- Providing direct employment of specialists, such as foresters and arboriculturists
- Generating cheaper maintenance costs than grassland and other types of green spaces
- Increasing property values by providing an attractive leafy setting for individual dwellings and/or wider residential areas
- Creating an attractive environment; encouraging inward investment to employment and retail areas as a consequence
- Increasing the value of undeveloped land



*Mature lime trees retained at Rowley Arts Centre, St Neots*



*Leighton Bromswold*

In recent years there has been increased interest in quantifying these benefits and translating them into financial terms. A system known as CAVAT (Capital Asset Value for Amenity Trees) has been developed to allow authorities to prepare a valuation of their tree stock which can then be used to justify managing the trees as if it were a financial asset of the community. This is a major step forward as traditionally, the management of trees and woodlands by local authorities has been seen solely as a cost, with no acknowledgement of the financial benefits that trees bring. Such an assessment of the value of trees in Huntingdonshire has not been undertaken, although it is recommended as a target for the future and is included within the Action Plan.

## Health

Health and social benefits of trees include:

- Providing a variety of sensory elements eg to those with visual impairment, through hearing a breeze or smelling a scent
- Enhancing quality of life through stress relief, improving mental health and emotional well-being
- Supplying cleaner air which decreases the incidence of asthma
- Reducing the occurrence of skin cancer by providing shade
- Speeding up patients' recovery times when trees are visible from hospital beds



*Capinus betulus* at Pathfinder House



## Overview of the District's tree stock

Tree cover in Huntingdonshire has been slowly decreasing since Saxon times. Today, the main types of tree cover are: woodlands, hedgerow trees, street trees, trees on public land (parks, schools etc), trees on private land and orchards.

## Woodlands

The majority of natural woodland in Huntingdonshire is owned and managed by statutory agencies such as English Nature or charities such as the Woodland Trust or the Wildlife Trust.

Woodlands of note include:

- Monkswood near Abbots Ripton owned by English Nature
- Archers Wood and Aversley Wood owned by the Woodland Trust
- Brampton Wood, Ladys Wood and Raveley Wood owned by Cambridgeshire Wildlife Trust

The District Council's Countryside Services manage woodland contained within Hinchingsbrooke Country Park and Paxton Pits Nature Reserve. The Thicket, between St Ives and Houghton is a small area of ancient woodland with public access; whilst Holt Island, at the western end of St Ives is now wooded, being a disused Osier bed.



*Hinchingsbrooke Park Beech and Pine woodland*

There are two areas of woodland bordering Hill Rise Park: Top and Long Plantations. Both are pleasant areas of mature woodland with informal access.

Oak and ash are the predominant canopy species with an understorey of shrub, including hazel, elder, hawthorn and wild cherry in less dense areas. In places, the conservation value of woodlands has been reduced due to the replacement of deciduous trees with non-native conifers, to create mixed plantations.

The District contains several areas of Ancient Woodland, and several areas of Ancient Replanted Woodland (areas where Ancient Woodland has been felled and replanted). Some notable and popular Ancient Woodlands in the District include:

Brampton Wood (north east of Grafham Water), Monks Wood (south west of Wood Walton), Aversley Wood and Archer's Wood (just south of Sawtry), and Raveley Wood and Lady's Wood (south of Ramsey). Ancient Woodlands are the most important type of woodlands in the District and it is important to manage them and protect their historic features and diverse wildlife, to ensure their protection as key components of the local landscape character. Some areas of Ancient Replanted Woodland in the District include: areas of Brampton Wood, Bevill's Wood (adjacent to Monks Wood), West Wood and Diddington Wood (both near to Grafham Water).



## Hedgerow trees

The agricultural landscape of Huntingdonshire includes both arable and pastoral farmland divided by hedgerows, with trees and farming still representing the predominant land use within the District. From the end of the Second World War until the mid 1990's the increased mechanisation and efficiency of farming led to changes in landscape character across the District with significant loss of hedgerows and hedgerow trees.

The presence of hedgerows and hedgerow trees varies across the District, changing with the different landscape character areas. The areas of fen margins have small fields with hedges, trees and woodlands which creates an intimate scale to the landscape, while the large scale field patterns of the central claylands have few hedgerows or hedgerow trees. The south east claylands have heavy clay soils supporting cereal crops and arable production, with tall hedgerows with frequent hedgerow trees in the central part of the area. In the northern Wolds the plateau or ridges are in arable production and have a relatively open feel, with long views and few hedgerow trees. In contrast, the valleys have a higher proportion of pastoral land and are more vegetated, with large mixed hedgerows containing ancient and young oaks. In the southern Wolds, hedgerows and hedgerow trees also make an important contribution to the well vegetated character of the landscape however this is under pressure from the effects of intrusive and insensitive development and the gradual loss of traditional features of the agricultural landscape.



*Hedgerow Elms*

## Street trees

The District has a particularly low coverage of street trees within its built up areas. There are few residential areas with tree planting and few of the main through-routes are lined by trees. Street trees are particularly sparse in the areas of late twentieth and early twenty-first century developments in the District. Although vegetation in private gardens and public open spaces adjoining the road often assists in softening the built-up areas, most trees are small or medium-sized which bring limited benefits. The scarcity of street trees within the District's built up areas is a cause for concern and there is potential for significant improvements to be made to the quality of the townscapes and villages by the introduction of more tree planting where space permits.

There are a few notable areas or streets with trees, as listed more specifically below:

- Huntingdon – Victoria square has a variety of different trees along the streets
- St. Neots – Several London Plane trees along the market square
- St. Ives – Streets including and around Green Ley's have a number of mature street trees
- Ramsey – Significant row of Lime trees on Wood Lane
- Godmanchester – Several notable mature trees along the side of West Street



*Green Leys, St Ives*



## Privately owned trees

The majority of trees within the District are privately owned and are located either within private gardens, country estates/parklands or on agricultural land. Parkland areas include country estates around Kimbolton and Elton including Elton Park and the parkland setting to Kimbolton village and School which contain distinctive groups of parkland trees. The Abbots Ripton Estate to the northern edge of Huntingdon is set within one of the few remaining substantial areas of woodland in Huntingdonshire. Abbots Ripton and surrounding villages in the estate are of particular importance and interest due to the survival of many elm trees. The devastation of Dutch Elm disease was greatly reduced by many factors. Today there are over a thousand living mature elms in this part of the District.

HDC has little control over privately owned trees except the most notable trees most of which are covered by Tree Preservation Orders. Privately owned trees are an important asset for the District making a very significant contribution to the character and quality of the District's landscape and the settlements within it. The Council can influence the management of some of the most notable privately-owned trees in the District through its statutory powers for Tree Preservation Orders and Conservation Areas. The remaining privately-owned trees are outside their immediate scope and responsibility although guidance on best practice can be given to encourage positive management and planting works.



*Kimbolton Castle, Wellingtonia trees*

## Trees in Public open spaces

There are a number of established parks in built up areas around the District, many simply taking the form of grass lawns and a variety of mature and newly planted trees. HDC directly own and actively manage Riverside Park and Priory Park in St. Neots, together with Riverside Park and Sapley Park in Huntingdon and Hill Rise Park in St. Ives. Some of these parks are historic, and contain mature trees of species traditionally associated with parkland planting, including lime, sycamore, oak, cedar of Lebanon and giant redwood.



*Warner's Park, St Ives*

## Orchards

There are a notable number of orchards in the District, predominantly recognised for growing a variety of apple and plum species. The number and extent of orchards has declined rapidly in the last fifty years as a result of increased competition from foreign imports and a reduction in locally available labour, and are now a threatened habitat. Although fewer than previously, there still remains a high density of orchards in the eastern part of the District, in particular around Somersham, Bluntisham, and Colne, approximately 5 miles north east of St. Ives. Orchards support a rich variety of wildlife, particularly in the grassland beneath the trees.



*Apple orchard*





## Key tree issues in Huntingdonshire

Although trees are undoubtedly an asset for the District, they can also cause (or be perceived as causing) problems which can be costly to resolve. The following is a summary of the key issues which are currently experienced in the District:

## Technical and planning issues

- New tree planting of appropriate species needed to address the gradual decrease in tree cover across the District since Saxon times
- Outdated Tree Preservation Orders with some average or poor quality trees inappropriately covered by TPOs whilst other high quality trees are not covered
- Ad hoc system of tree management works on HDC owned trees and absence of programme of regular tree works or prioritization system for tree works
- Absence of appropriate computerised tree management database for tree survey data
- Absence of protocol for investigating potential infringements of Tree Preservation Orders and Conservation Area regulations
- Incomplete survey information for Council-owned trees (including incomplete register of higher risk Hazard trees)
- Absence of protocol for the management of claims against the Council for damage to property allegedly caused by root damage from Council-owned trees
- Lack of information on historic or current % tree cover across the District resulting in difficulty of monitoring changes in tree cover over time
- Requests from the public for tree pruning due to complaints about loss of light, obstruction of view etc
- Dangerous trees and tree limb falls causing personal injury or damage to properties
- Replacement trees are needed to replace trees removed to accommodate new development or due to being diseased, dying or dead
- Litter collection, dog fouling, and weed and sucker growth in tree pits around base of trees



*Beech tree with extensive decay*

## **Public awareness and understanding issues**

- Lack of public information on the Council website about trees and advice on best practice for tree planting and management
- Absence of a strategic approach to tree planting across the District
- Lack of understanding of tree pruning by the general public (frequency, types of pruning works etc)



### Species specific issues

- Large number of Ash trees likely to be affected by Chalara fraxinea (Ash die-back) in the next 5 – 15 years resulting in further significant reduction in tree cover and the loss of notable landscape features.

### Street tree issues

- Scarcity of street trees in many of the urban areas in the District (particularly the more recent residential developments)
- Damage to pavements and highways by tree roots lifting surfacing and creating a trip hazard
- Complaints about fruit, sap and bird mess from trees on vehicles, pavements and properties resulting in slip hazard
- Trees in pavements can cause obstructions to the visually impaired and pedestrians with buggies
- Obstruction of CCTV sight lines and satellite dish reception lines by trees
- Tree root damage by street trees to adjacent properties resulting in costs arising from subsidence claims



*Public realm street trees*



## A Tree Strategy for Huntingdonshire

# 1.0 Action plan

- 1.1 Five Year Action Plan to deliver the aims of the Tree Strategy**
- 1.2 Key aims and objectives**
- 1.3 Tree Strategy Action Plan – 2015 – 2020**
- 1.4 Monitoring and reviewing procedures**
- 1.5 Community involvement**

## 1.0 Action Plan

### 1.1 Five Year Action Plan to deliver the aims of the Tree Strategy

The Council is committed to the high quality and proactive management of its tree stock . To achieve this, we will use this Action Plan which demonstrates how the Key Aims of the Tree Strategy will be implemented over the next 5 years.

### 1.2 Key aims and objectives

Three key aims and seven associated objectives have been identified which are central to the Tree Strategy for the District:

**Aim 1: To protect the District's tree resource through sustainable management of the tree population.**

**Objective 1** - Identify and evaluate important trees and woodlands

**Objective 2** - Protect vulnerable trees and woodlands of high amenity

**Aim 2: To practice and promote good tree care.**

**Objective 3** – Care for Council owned trees to ensure a sustainable tree population

**Objective 4** – Encourage tree owners to care for their trees

**Objective 5** – Promote the value of trees and importance of good tree care

**Aim 3: To carry out, and encourage appropriate tree planting to ensure a healthy balanced tree population.**

**Objective 6** – Plant and manage young trees on Council land to ensure a balanced tree population

**Objective 7** – Encourage tree planting on private land



### 1.3 Tree Strategy Action Plan – 2015 – 2020

To support the delivery of the overarching vision and mission statement for trees in the District, and the key aims and objectives identified above, a five year action plan has been prepared. Actions have been prioritised as follows:

**Priority A** - actions to be completed by the end of 2015

**Priority B** - actions to be scheduled for completion by the end of 2017

**Priority C** - actions to be undertaken as resources allow

**Ongoing** - actions which are currently part of tree management and will continue to be so for the foreseeable future

Key to abbreviations used can be found at the end of this section.

## Key Aim 1 - Protect the trees within Huntingdonshire District, through sustainable management

### Objective 1 - Identify and evaluate important trees and woodlands

	Action	Resources required (Key staff involvement)	Expected outcomes	Reason	Priority
1.1	Develop the use of a map based computerised tree management system for all Council tree management	May require additional staff resources and software to set up, but once in place can be used by existing staff (AO/IMD/GIS officer)	A more effective tree management system; auditable tracking of tree works and inspections	To replace ad hoc system of recording and tracking tree work requests and inspections and contribute towards a defensible system of tree management	A
1.2	Establish a computerised record of the Council's tree stocks	Existing – data can be collected as trees are inspected by (ATL)	Gradual ad hoc accumulation of data on trees managed by the Council	Information on Council owned trees needs to be more readily available  To allow tracking of inspections and works undertaken	A
1.3	Initiate a prioritised survey of Council owned trees, incorporating amenity valuation based on Capital Asset Value for Amenity Trees (CAVAT)	May require additional staff resources (temporary tree surveyor/ consultant) to allow high priority trees on areas of Council land with high public usage to be assessed within a reasonable timescale. (ATL/GSO)	A prioritised system of inspections and tree work for trees on Council land with high public usage  Some data on trees in lower priority areas	More effective and targeted use of resources for the management of trees  Improved tree risk management by identifying hazard trees  Use resources effectively	B/C (dependent on availability of resources)
1.4	Identify and evaluate important groups of trees and woodlands	Existing (AO/GIS officer/P)	Existing data sets collated (ancient woodlands, ancient trees, nature conservation sites, TPO woodlands etc) Additional information to be added as required	Important information on the location and extent of important trees and woodlands easily accessible to AO to guide tree management	A
1.5	Develop a 'favourite trees' campaign to raise profile of notable and ancient trees in Huntingdonshire	Existing resources. Will require some limited funds for publicity - possibly grant available or could be sponsored (AO in partnership with TWC, ATL and ATA)	Raise profile of trees particularly veteran trees of interest to residents e.g. tree walk guides, notable trees; e.g. Huntingdonshire walks. Fostering local pride and a sense of place	Raise awareness of the importance of trees both environmentally and culturally  Supporting regional and national campaigns e.g.; Tree Council campaigns  Useful education tool	B
1.6	Undertake mapping exercise of tree cover across the District.	Existing resources. Will require some limited funds to purchase software. (AO/GIS officer/P)	Accurate mapping and understanding of % tree cover across the District	Improve understanding of existing tree cover in the District and to monitor changes over time	A



**Key Aim 1 - Protect the trees within Huntingdonshire District, through sustainable management**

**Objective 2 - Protect vulnerable trees and woodlands of high amenity**

	Action	Resources required (Key staff involvement)	Expected outcomes	Reason	Priority
2.1	Make new Tree Preservation Orders as appropriate to protect trees under threat	Existing – officer time (AO/P)	To protect important trees particularly of high public amenity when they come under threat  To have a transparent system of assessment	To protect prominent amenity trees from being damaged or felled inappropriately  Protecting the landscape and the environment of Huntingdonshire	ongoing
2.2	Review Tree Preservation Orders	A gradual review may be undertaken as part of day to day works with existing staff resources. A wholesale review would require additional resources (officer time or through employing a consultant). (P/ AO/Legal)	More appropriate application of TPOs  Tree owners not hindered by inappropriate planning restrictions  Once initial review complete more effective use of officer time	Some existing orders are over 30 years old and have become inappropriate, whilst many trees that should be protected are not currently covered  A review of existing orders would allow resources to be applied more effectively  Existing Government guidance is that there should be a program for reviewing existing TPO's	C
2.3	Agree a protocol for investigating potential infringements of Tree Preservation Orders and Conservation Area regulations	Existing – officer time (P/AO)	To ensure that there is a clear course of action to follow in each case  To ensure that evidence is collected in the correct manner and with effective use of existing resources	Effective use of officer time  To ensure that where a case is pursued the evidence collected is appropriate for use in court  Ensure that where appropriate suitable mitigation is undertaken	B
2.4	'Guidance Note 3: Guidance for Trees and Development' to be adopted within the LDF as SPD (Supplementary Planning Document)	Existing resources (AO/P)	Clear guidance to potential developers on the appropriate retention, protection and planting of trees  Improved protection and retention of trees to enhance new developments	To ensure that trees on development sites are retained where appropriate and where trees are removed that suitable mitigation is undertaken	A



## Key Aim 2 - Care for the trees within Huntingdonshire District, by practicing and promoting good tree care

### Objective 3 - Care for Council owned trees to ensure a sustainable tree population

	Action	Resources required (Key staff involvement)	Expected outcomes	Reason	Priority
3.1	Apply the principals of Guidance Note 2: Guidance for Tree Management to all tree management decisions.	Existing resources (ATL/CS)	A consistent approach to tree management across the District  Transparent decisions made in relation to requests for tree works	To ensure that the tree cover in the District is managed sustainability	Ongoing
3.2	Ensure that the work to Council trees complies with the Guidance Note 1: Guidance for works to trees	Existing resources (ATL/CS)	Ensure a high standard of tree work	To ensure a healthy and safe tree population	B
3.3	Review Good Practices Guides at least every 5 years	Existing resources (AO/ATL)	The guides will be up to date and reflect current best practice and standards	To ensure that Council advice reflects best practice	Ongoing
3.4	Implement a Tree Risk Management Strategy as outlined in Guidance Note 4: Tree Risk Management	Existing resources (AO/ATL/IRO)	A more comprehensive and pro-active approach to tree risk management  Identify ways in which to reduce the foreseeable risk to an acceptable level and the resources required to achieve this	To fulfil the Council's Duty of Care	A
3.5	Undertake management which promotes biodiversity	Existing resources (ATL/GSO/CS)	Habitat protection and creation  Sustainable management of tree population	Contribute to the aims of the Local Biodiversity Action Plan, Wildlife and Countryside Acts and Natural Environments and Rural Communities Act 2006	Ongoing
3.6	Review recycling options	Existing resources (ATL/GSO/CS)	Maximise the diverse and sustainable reuse of arisings from tree work	Good environmental management	C



**Key Aim 2 - Care for the trees within Huntingdonshire District, by practicing and promoting good tree care**

**Objective 4 – Encourage tree owners to care for their trees**

	Action	Resources required (Key staff involvement)	Expected outcomes	Reason	Priority
4.1	<p>Provide information on the Council website in relation to trees</p> <p>This will include access to this Tree Strategy and Good Practice Guides</p>	Existing resources (AO)	<p>Provision of advice and information on good tree care to residents of the District.</p> <p>Reduce officer time spent on dealing with requests for general information; time to be diverted to other projects</p>	<p>More effective use of staff resources. General information and advice could be provided more comprehensively and effectively via the website.</p> <p>Residents would have access to information out of office hours</p>	A
4.2	Produce a set of leaflets based on the Good Practice Guides for those people who do not have access to the internet	Funds for the production of leaflets to be identified. (AO)	As above	Would ensure that those residents without access to the internet can access information and advice	A
4.3	Use planning powers (Development Control & S106 agreements) to generate management plans for woodland and new planting on private land	Existing resources (AO/P)	<p>Increase woodland under appropriate management</p> <p>Soft landscape and tree planting on new developments managed appropriately</p>	To ensure that the tree planting and management undertaken as part of planning and development process is sustainably managed	Ongoing

## Key Aim 2 - Care for the trees within Huntingdonshire District, by practicing and promoting good tree care

### Objective 5 - Promote the value of trees and importance of good tree care

	Action	Resources required (Key staff involvement)	Expected outcomes	Reason	Priority
5.1	Provide information on the Council website and in leaflets in relation to management and care of trees	Existing resources (AO)  Funds will be required to produce leaflets	Improved provision of advice and information on good tree care to residents of the District	To ensure that the public have access to good practice guidance particularly in relation to tree pruning	A
5.2	Continue to support the Tree Warden network in the District	Tree Council membership and payment of some expenses to wardens for tree warden forum/other training days. Estimated £750 year.(TWC)	Provide local information on trees and bring any threats to trees to the attention of the AO  Develop ideas for local projects and organise and encourage tree planting and other practical work  Acting as a local community liaison – giving general advice on planting and grants etc	To promote the value and importance of trees on a local level  To empower local communities to become involved in managing and planting trees in their local area. Promote good tree care planting and maintenance	Ongoing
5.3	Assist friends of parks in producing self-guided walk leaflets which indicate trees and wildlife of interest	Production of leaflets will incur some costs which may be met out of existing resources	Raise awareness of local trees and the environment  Educational resource for schools	To promote the value and importance of trees on a local level	C



**Key Aim 3 - Plant more trees within Huntingdonshire District, by promoting and carrying out appropriate tree planting.**

**Objective 6 – Plant and managed young trees on Council land to ensure a healthy balanced tree population**

	Action	Resources required (Key staff involvement)	Expected outcomes	Reason	Priority
6.1	Plant at least 1 replacement tree for each one felled on HDC land.	Existing resources plus additional resources from grants as part of larger projects to be utilised where possible (ATL/GSO/CS)	At least maintain current tree population on Council land. Although replacement may not always be in the same place, one will be planted in an appropriate alternative location	To maintain a sustainable and balanced population of trees	A
6.2	Manage natural regeneration in Council owned woodlands	Existing resources plus additional resources from grants as part of larger projects to be utilised where possible (ATL/GSO/CS)	Maximise the potential for tree replacement using local natural stock rather than introduced trees.  Improved cost-effectiveness therefore allowing resources to be diverted elsewhere	More natural, sustainable and cost effective method of tree replacement where appropriate	B
6.3	Identify suitable areas for tree planting – including larger scale planting	Existing resources (AO/ATL/GSO)	A more comprehensive and strategic approach to increasing tree cover in the District.  Will contribute to exceeding the 1 for 1 tree replacement policy.  Will enable the maximum use of available granting funding	More strategic approach to maintaining a sustainable tree population	B

**Key Aim 3 - Plant more trees within Huntingdonshire District, by promoting and carrying out appropriate tree planting.**

**Objective 7 – Encourage tree planting on private land**

	Action	Resources required (Key staff involvement)	Expected outcomes	Reason	Priority
7.1	Provide information on the Council website in relation to tree planting	Existing resources (AO)	Easier access to appropriate information  More appropriate tree planting being undertaken	To assist local residents in tree planting by providing useful advice	A
7.2	Pursue replacement planting made as a condition of planning permission, and TPO application. Enforcement powers to be used if necessary.	Existing resources (AO/P)	Ensure that where it is appropriate, tree replacement occurs.	To maximise the potential for appropriate tree planting on private land  Maintain the landscape character	Ongoing
7.3	Encourage tree planting as part of development proposals and new infrastructure (regeneration schemes etc)	Existing or grant aided as part of larger scale projects (AO/L/P)	Appropriate tree planting as part of new developments	To ensure opportunities for new tree planting are identified and undertaken to mitigate the loss of trees for development	Ongoing
7.4	Continue to support the Parish Planting Scheme	Existing resources (TWC)	1000's of new trees planted on private land each year.	Raise profile of tree planting  To encourage Parish Councils, individual land owners and smaller community groups to plant trees	A



## Abbreviations

<b>AO</b>	Arboricultural Officer
<b>ATA</b>	Arboricultural Technical Assistant
<b>ATL</b>	Arboricultural Team Leader
<b>CCC</b>	Cambridgeshire County Council
<b>CS</b>	Countryside Services
<b>CWT</b>	Cambridgeshire Wildlife Trust
<b>GIS</b>	GIS Officer
<b>GSO</b>	Green Space Officer
<b>HDC</b>	Huntingdonshire District Council
<b>IMD</b>	Information Management Division
<b>IRO</b>	Insurance/Risk Officer
<b>L</b>	Luminus Group
<b>P</b>	Planning
<b>TWC</b>	Tree Warden Co-ordinator
<b>WT</b>	Woodland Trust

## 1.4 Monitoring and reviewing procedures

It will be necessary for monitoring to be carried out to allow the success of the Tree Strategy to be assessed and to assist in identifying areas where new or amended tree policy is necessary. A series of performance indicators have been identified to facilitate this monitoring and are detailed below:

- No. of new trees successfully established each year, broken down to identify, trees on private land, as a result of TPO application conditions, planning application conditions, Parish Planting Scheme, and for trees on HDC land, Countryside, Green Spaces, and County Council land.
- No. of management plans produced and successfully implemented for woodland sites
- No. of trained Tree Wardens actively taking part in community events
- No. of parks and open space sites in which trees have been inspected and database updated
- Analysis of claims made, number of claims successfully defended and amount spent on insurance claims, broken down into tree and branch failures, and alleged root damage claims.
- No. of trees removed or permitted to be removed by the Council

This Tree Strategy will need to be reviewed and updated on a regular basis. It should be a dynamic document which can respond to changes in the District, new legislation and emerging industry best practice. As a minimum it is recommended that the Tree Strategy is reviewed every five years. The review should include:

- A detailed analysis of the monitoring information
- Identification of any obstacles or barriers to implementation and delivery of the policy contained within the strategy
- Recommendations for amendments to the strategy to respond to finding from the above



## 1.5 Community involvement

The success of the Tree Strategy will be greatest if it has the support of the District's community and the involvement of the community in its implementation. The following measures are proposed to promote community support and involvement in the Tree Strategy:

- Public consultation on the draft Tree Strategy
- High profile launch of the final Tree Strategy with press and web releases
- Continue to support the District Tree Warden scheme
- Continue existing parish planting scheme



*Oak trees near Wooley*





## A Tree Strategy for Huntingdonshire

# 2.0 Tree Policies

- 2.1 Policy context
- 2.2 District Tree Policies
  - Tree protection policies
  - Tree care policies
  - Tree planting policies

## 2.0 Tree Policies

### 2.1 Policy context

The Tree Strategy for Huntingdonshire has been informed by a comprehensive review of policy at the national, regional and local levels, to ensure consistency between the Tree Strategy and the overarching policy framework. Principal policy issues set at the international scale and reflected in national policy include the protection and enhancement of biodiversity and ecology, landscape and cultural heritage. The relevant and key policies are summarised below:

#### *International*

- Sustainable development is the main national policy driver, filtering through from international policy and legislation. International and national bodies have set out broad principles of sustainable development, with Resolution 24/187 of the United Nations General Assembly defining sustainable development as meeting the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs (World Commission on Environment & Development - 1987), ensuring a balance between social, environmental and economic development. Trees' benefits encompass these three pillars of sustainable development.



### **National**

- Trees in Towns II, undertaken for the Department of Communities and Local Government, 2008). This survey of urban trees in England, and their condition and management, promotes investment in the urban forest. It sets a number of targets that Local Government should achieve including the implementation of a comprehensive Tree Strategy.
- A Strategy for England's Trees, Woods and Forests (Department for Environment, Food and Rural Affairs, 2007) aims to ensure that there is a resource of trees, woods and forests where they can contribute most in terms of environmental, economic and social benefits. It highlights the need for partnership working between all those responsible for trees, to increase their contribution to quality of lives, quality of places, and the sustainable use of resources.
- The National Planning Policy Framework (Department for Communities & Local Government) 2012) sets out policies for England, and has the central theme of achieving sustainable development.

### **Regional**

- Climate Change & Environment Strategy (Cambridgeshire County Council 2012), adopted 2008), which tackled the issues of climate change and environmental sustainability in Cambridgeshire. The strategy recognised that in Cambridgeshire the pace of development creates a huge pressure on the environment, and aimed to balance environmental issues, social issues and the economy.
- Cambridgeshire Green Infrastructure Strategy (Cambridgeshire Horizons 2006, reviewed in 2011).The reviewed Strategy was developed by Cambridgeshire Horizons working with all the Cambridgeshire Local Authorities and statutory and non-statutory nature conservation organisations, and provides a strong evidence base for future policy and funding decisions, such as the Community Infrastructure Levy; ensuring that high quality and sustainable Green Infrastructure is delivered to 2031 and beyond.

## Local

- Growing our Communities: Huntingdonshire Sustainable Community Strategy 2008 – 2028 (Huntingdonshire District Council, 2008) which informed the subsequent Core Strategy.
- A Plan for our Environment: 'Growing Awareness' (Huntingdonshire District Council, 2008). This five year environment strategy was the starting point for a variety of initiatives aimed at safeguarding Huntingdonshire's unique environment for the future.
- Core Strategy (Huntingdonshire District Council, adopted 2009), which sets out the overall vision and objectives for the District up to 2026. Also relevant are saved policies of the Huntingdonshire Local Plan 1995 and the Huntingdonshire Local Plan Alteration 2002. The Huntingdonshire Tree Strategy contributes to the following objectives for the Core Strategy:
  - To maintain, enhance and conserve Huntingdonshire's characteristic landscapes, habitats and species and historic environment
  - To increase and enhance major strategic green infrastructure while improving the natural habitat and biodiversity
  - To ensure that design of new development is of high quality and that integrates effectively with its setting and promotes local distinctiveness
  - To increase opportunities for pursuing a healthy lifestyle, by maintaining and enhancing recreation opportunities and encouraging walking and cycling
- Huntingdonshire Landscape & Townscape Assessment (Huntingdonshire District Council Supplementary Planning Document – adopted 2007). The report provides information on the visual character of Huntingdonshire's landscape and market towns, to raise the awareness and understanding of the special qualities of the District, and assist HDC in considering future priorities for the conservation, enhancement and regeneration of the area's countryside, villages and towns.
- Huntingdonshire Design Guide (Huntingdonshire District Council Supplementary Planning Document, adopted 2009), produced as an aid to improving the quality of new development in Huntingdonshire. It set out important design principles and explains key requirements of the District Council.



*Platanus x hispanica*



**The main issues arising from the review of the policy context that need to be considered in the Tree Strategy are:**

The role of trees in climate change mitigation and adaptation

Realisation of the social, economic and environmental benefits of trees

Secure adequate investment in tree management programmes to reduce avoidable future costs

Identify and protect ancient woodland and veteran trees

Significantly increase tree and woodland cover in the District

Ensure that appropriate tree planting is included in development proposals where possible and avoid loss of trees through development

Follow the principle of right place, right tree

Consider trees in the District as a single unified resource

Ensure that the Tree Strategy informs the Local Development Framework and is a material consideration in decision making

Realise the regeneration potential of trees in the public realm

## 2.2 District tree policies

### Tree protection policies

#### **TP1 - The Tree Preservation Order system will be used to ensure that trees of high amenity which are under threat are protected.**

Many important privately owned trees and woodlands are already protected by virtue of being within a Conservation Area or by Tree Preservation Orders. However there are still trees of high amenity that are not afforded this protection.

Generally if trees are owned and managed by responsible owners it is not necessary to formally protect them, although trees of very high amenity or those which come under threat should be protected.

Trees under threat may come to the attention of the Council through various avenues such as applications for development, Conservation Area notifications or requests from the public. In each case before making an order the Council will carry out an assessment that considers the justification for making an Order based on government guidance.

#### **TP2 - When a Tree Preservation Order is made the owner of the tree has a right to object to the order.**

Objections will be considered by the Arboricultural Officer and where they cannot be resolved at this level they will be referred to the Development Management – Trees Sub-Committee for a final decision.

If the objector is not satisfied with the final decision they may apply to undertake works to the tree(s) which if refused then gives them the right to appeal to the Secretary of State.

#### **TP3 - Felling and pruning of protected trees will only be granted consent where there is adequate justification. Applicants have the right of appeal to the Secretary of State against refusal of consent.**

Applications to undertake work will be considered in relation to the policies outlined in this document and the latest national guidance. Where work applied for is not considered appropriate, the Arboricultural Officer will advise the applicant on the type of tree work that would be acceptable and invite them to submit a revised application. If an application is refused then the applicant will be advised of their right of appeal to the Secretary of State.

Notifications to undertake works to trees in Conservation Areas will also be considered in relation to the policies outlined in this document and national guidance.

Where work applied for is not considered appropriate the Arboricultural Officer will advise the applicant on the type of tree work that would be acceptable and invite them to withdraw the notification and submit a revised one. If agreement cannot be reached consideration will be given to the making of a Tree Preservation Order, in accordance with the Council's procedure for assessing the suitability of a tree for inclusion in a TPO.



**TP4 - When unauthorised works are undertaken to trees protected by a Tree Preservation Order an investigation will be carried out and enforcement action will be taken where there is sufficient evidence and justification to do so.**

The Council will investigate all unauthorised works to trees and gather information and evidence in relation to these infringements. An assessment of each case will be made with the advice of the Council's Planning Officers and Solicitor. Appropriate action will be taken where there is justification and sufficient evidence to do so.

Efforts will be made to identify, protect and retain veteran trees within the District because of the cultural, historical and biodiversity value. Veteran and ancient trees are particularly important for biodiversity as they provide a habitat for many species some of which may be protected in their own right such as fungi, lichens and invertebrates and also provide roosting and nesting sites for bats and birds. These trees are also often of cultural and historical significance because of their connections with the past.

**TP 5 - The Council will promote the value and importance of trees, particularly through the use of its parks and countryside, as an educational and recreational resource.**

To broaden the understanding and appreciation of trees as a vital part of our natural life support system; cleaning the air we breathe, moderating climatic extremes and contributing to the health and well-being of the community.

**TP 6 - The Council will not grant planning permission for developments which directly or indirectly threaten trees or woodlands of significant amenity or developments which have inadequate or inappropriate landscape proposals, unless there is adequate justification to do so.**

To ensure that the tree and woodland stock of Huntingdonshire is protected and the health and longevity of that cover is secured, reflecting the aim that trees will become a key defining feature of the District for both current and future generations

**TP 7 - The Council will impose planning conditions to ensure adequate provision is made for the protection or planting of trees, and to make Tree Preservation Orders (TPOs) as necessary.**

When assessing planning applications there are many factors which have to be considered and decisions are guided by local and national policy, current legislation and government advice and recommendations. More information of the particular policies that apply how trees on development sites should be considered is given in Guidance note 3 - Guidance for Trees and Development.

## Tree care policies

### **TP 8 - HDC owned trees will not be felled or pruned unless there is adequate justification.**

The Council may carry out works to trees for safety reasons to reduce risk and liability, and to allow the reasonable enjoyment of public and private property. We may also prune trees to improve the structure and help the future health of the tree. Felling and removal of trees will only be considered where pruning does not offer a reasonable solution. Where risk is an issue a risk assessment of the tree will be undertaken.

Tree work may be required for the benefit of a group of trees for example it may be necessary to remove diseased trees or to thin out a group of closely planted trees to benefit the strongest individuals. More detailed guidance on making decisions in relation to tree work is given in Guidance note 2 - Guidance for Tree Management.

### **TP9 - Requests for tree work to Council trees will be considered in accordance with Guidance note 2 - Guidance for Tree Management.**

This guidance note provides a transparent process by which requests for tree work will be considered. It helps officers deal with the most common requests received for work to trees in a constant and professional way. More unusual requests will be considered on their merits in line with policies and guidance outlined in this strategy.

### **TP10 - All requests for works to trees will be assessed by the Council's Arboricultural Team.**

All work to be carried out to Council trees will be undertaken in consultation with the Arboricultural Team Leader, to ensure appropriate works are being recommended, and that all works are completed to a high professional standard in accordance with the policies and guidance provided by this document.

### **TP11 - All tree work undertaken by or on behalf of the Council shall be carried out in strict accordance with Guidance note 1, Guidance for works to trees.**

Wherever possible the arisings of tree work will be recycled.





**TP12 - A computerised record and risk management system will be developed for all Council owned trees.**

Some initial work was carried out to survey and record trees on Council owned land in 2002. There were problems with the first tree survey, and some of the data has since been corrupted and lost when it was being transferred to the 'Uniform' database, which is not an appropriate integrated tree management system. While the initial survey was not perfect it did identify that there were thousands of trees that were not being looked after, and this helped with the setting up of the Council's Arboricultural team. This initial work needs to be built on, and all trees on HDC land need to be identified and a programme of surveying introduced.

The aim is to develop a computerised record of Council owned trees and a prioritised regime of re-inspection based on the level of risk. Resources will need to be identified to develop this system to cover all Council owned trees.

Guidance note 6 sets out how the Council will approach the management of risk associated with the tree population and how this will be developed in the future.

**TP13 – The Council will work with the County Council and Town and Parish Councils to encourage an extensive risk assessment and active tree.**

Many significant trees within Huntingdonshire, along roads, within school grounds and in towns and villages are the responsibility of Cambridgeshire County Council and Town and Parish Councils. However an extensive risk assessment of all trees on their land has not been undertaken and proactive tree management does not take place.

**TP14 - Owners of trees that pose an identified and significant risk to neighbouring properties or Council land will be asked to undertake remedial works. If no action is taken the Council will use its powers where justified to ensure remedial work is undertaken and the owner recharged the cost.**

To ensure that the public is not put at risk the Council will use its powers where justified under the Local Authority (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1976 to enforce the owners of imminently dangerous trees to take action to remove the hazard. See Guidance note 5 - Miscellaneous Provisions Practice Note.

If it is not possible to identify the owner of the trees the Council will do the work necessary and the cost of the works will be placed as a land charge on the property so in the event of the land being sold the costs can be recovered. The assessment of risk will be based on the principles of risk assessment as outline in Guidance note 4 - Tree Risk Management.

**TP15 - The Council will promote the care of trees through the provision of information and advice particularly for the owners of protected trees.**

General advice and information will be made available to the owners of trees which promote good practice tree care in particular through the use of Guidance note 1 - Guidance for works to trees, and Guidance note 2 - Guidance for Tree Management.

The Arboricultural Officer will assist the owners of protected trees in making applications to undertake appropriate tree work.

**TP16 – Trees to be retained on development sites must be appropriately protected during construction works.**

Where it is required as part of the planning permission that trees on development sites are to be retained they will be protected in accordance with the recommendations of BS5837:2012 and Guidance note 3 - Guidance for Trees and Development.

Where trees are retained on a development sites, they can easily and quickly be severely damaged. This damage can be avoided by the use of tree protective fencing and prohibiting any construction works within these areas. Such provisions can be made a condition of planning approvals granted. Detailed guidance on this is given in the British Standard 5837:2012 - Trees in Relation to Construction and the specific guidance given in Guidance note 3 - Guidance for Trees and Development.

**TP17 – The Council will inform the public in advance of undertaking major tree works.**

Because the Council maintains hundreds of trees each year, it is not practical to consult with the public on all works undertaken. Pruning works if undertaken in accordance with the policy and the good practice guidance for tree works and tree management (Guidance notes 2 and 3) are unlikely to cause public concern. Felling of trees however can be contentious. Where the felling involves prominent mature trees and the timescales involved allow, efforts will be made to inform the public of the proposed works and the reasons why it is necessary. Occasionally it will be necessary to fell dangerous trees on safety grounds alone, where consultation is not possible.

Where the removal of prominent mature trees on Council land is being considered for reasons other than safety the consultation procedure as outlined in Guidance note 2 - Guidance for Tree Management will be followed.

For trees which are to be felled or pruned as part of the planning process i.e. trees protected by Tree Preservation Orders, in Conservation Area or on development sites there are already statutory consultation processes in place.



## Tree planting policies

**TP18 For every tree felled on Huntingdonshire District Council land at least one replacement tree will be planted.**

Where it is practical a new tree will be planted for every one felled. In some cases it may not be appropriate to replant in the same area as the tree felled. Where this is the case planting will take place elsewhere. Where trees in a woodland are removed and there is suitable natural regeneration, this regeneration will be managed in an appropriate manner to ensure that it adequately replaces felled trees, rather than introducing new trees.

Therefore successfully managed regeneration will contribute to tree replacement targets. There are a number of initiatives as outlined in the action plan which are specifically intended to increase tree planting within Huntingdonshire and it is anticipated that replacement planting will be greater than 1 for 1.

**TP19 Where trees are felled on private land the Council will encourage planting of replacement trees wherever possible.**

Where trees are on land owned by a third party such as Cambridgeshire County Council, Luminus Group, or the many Town and Parish Councils, it may not be possible to enforce replacement planting unless the trees have the protection of a TPO, lie within a Conservation Area, or where a felling licence is required. However, all of these land owners will be encouraged to adopt a policy of replacement planting. Where such trees are within a CA or subject to a TPO or planning condition the Council can require replanting the felled trees, similarly trees felled with a felling licence may be replaced under the control of the Forestry Commission.

**TP20 Selection of tree species for new planting to be appropriate to the local site characteristics.**

When new tree planting is undertaken, species will be selected that are appropriate to the planting site - based on the ultimate tree height and spread; growth habits; nutritional requirements; the local landscape, and future management requirements.

When trees are planted in rural areas, a presumption will be made to favour native species appropriate to the area, with direction taken from the Cambridgeshire Landscape Guidelines. (However, advice on planting of Ash trees, see guidance note 8 Information for the General Public from the East Anglian Tree and Landscape Officers Group, Ash Dieback (*Chalara fraxinea*.) Where possible the trees will be sourced from stock of local provenance. Non-native species are more likely to be planted in more formal and urban areas to add variety and interest. Tree planting in the parks will reflect the historical landscape of the park itself.

## Tree planting policies

**TP21 Trees will be planted and established in accordance with current best practice.**

It is important that when trees are planted that this is undertaken with care to ensure that they stand the best chance of survival. Different planting techniques will be required dependent on the type and size of tree being planted. Tree planting will follow best practice guidance BS 8545 Young Trees: From Nursery to Independence in the Landscape.

**TP22 The Council will promote tree planting by private landowners.**

The majority of trees in the District are on land in private ownership and it is important that if the urban tree population is to be sustained that appropriate tree planting is undertaken on this land. The Council can play a role in encouraging tree planting on private land by the provision of advice and directing individuals towards the various grants available for tree planting as well as other initiatives as the Parish Planting free tree scheme run by Huntingdonshire District Council.

The Council will promote the benefits of trees and continue to support and encourage the planting of trees on private land through the very successful Parish Planting scheme.

**TP23 The Council will use its powers to require appropriate replacement tree planting when protected trees are felled or when trees are removed to allow development.**

The Council can require that replacement trees are planted when trees protected by Tree Preservation Orders are felled. Replacement tree planting in Conservation Areas can only be required in some instances and when this is the case appropriate replacement planting will be required. Where trees are felled to allow a development landscaping including tree planting will be made a condition of planning approval where it is considered appropriate.

There is a widespread lack of knowledge in the current Landscape Industry of the basic requirements for successful establishment of new trees on Development Sites.



## A Tree Strategy for Huntingdonshire

# 3.0 Tree Guidance Notes

- 3.1 **Guidance Note 1: Guidance for Works to Trees**
- 3.2 **Guidance Note 2: Guidance for Tree Management**
- 3.3 **Guidance Note 3: Guidance for Trees and Development  
(a forthcoming SPD)**
- 3.4 **Guidance Note 4: The Evaluation of Trees for Protection with a TPO**
- 3.5 **Guidance Note 5: Planning Tree Enforcement Policy**
- 3.6 **Guidance Note 6: Tree Risk Management**
- 3.7 **Guidance Note 7: Advice for other public bodies, Parish Councils,  
schools**
- 3.8 **Guidance Note 8: Management of claims arising from root damage**
- 3.9 **Guidance note 9: Information for the General Public from the East  
Anglian Tree and Landscape Officers Group, Ash  
Dieback (*Chalara fraxinea*)**

## 3.0 Tree Guidance Notes

### 3.1 Guidance Note 1: Guidance for works to trees

#### 1 Purpose of the guide

The aim of this guide is to provide information and advice on tree work, particularly pruning operations, by describing different pruning techniques and how they might be used and for what reasons. It supplements the Guidance note 2 – Guidance for Tree Management and is primarily aimed at providing additional information to private tree owners and managers, particularly those with protected trees.

The work of the Council's arboriculturalists and contractors is also guided by this document and strengthened by the more detailed contract specifications which cover areas such as health and safety.

#### 2 Introduction

Pruning is the most common tree maintenance procedure. Pruning is often desirable or necessary to improve tree structure, limit inconvenience or maintain safety. Bad or unnecessary pruning can do more harm than good since each cut has the potential to change the growth of a tree, cause damage and decay, leave the tree unsightly, or allow the entry of wood decaying organisms.

Therefore no branch should be removed without a good reason. Some older trees do not tolerate pruning as well as younger trees and substantial pruning can have a life-limiting impact on the tree. The effect of pruning also varies between species and some are not naturally tolerant of pruning, notably beech, birch, and walnut. Pruning work should be carried out in accordance with BS 3998: 2010 by suitably qualified Arboriculturalists. If the level of pruning being considered is likely to severely damage or limit the life of the tree, felling and replanting with a site suitable species may be the more appropriate action to take.

It is important to consider pruning over the entire life-span of the tree or trees involved and not as a one-off single operation. Pruning in a single year should not exceed more than a quarter of a tree's leaf area except in very special circumstances. Many trees generate adventitious sprouts, in response to over-pruning, as they attempt to replace the stored energy. However live-branch pruning is an essential part of forming good crown structure, and is often a necessary procedure in the management of specimen trees within residential areas, parks and gardens.



This good practice guidance outlines the acceptable standards of tree work at the present time. It is based partly on guidance within British Standard Recommendations for Tree Work (BS3998:2010) and the Arboricultural Advisory and Information Service's Arboriculture Research Note 48, 'A Definition of the Best Pruning Position'. Any competent arboriculturalist will be aware of and familiar with these publications, and will be able to carry out work to the required standard.

This guidance deals with the most common procedures undertaken in tree work, however more specialised pruning may occasionally be specified.

### 3 Protected trees

Trees may be protected by Tree Preservation Orders or by virtue of their presence within a Conservation Area, see below. Therefore it is important to check with the Council before proceeding with any tree works. If a tree is protected it will be necessary to make an application to the Council and get written consent before proceeding. The forms and guidance notes for both TPO applications and Conservation Area notifications can be found at <http://www.huntingdonshire.gov.uk/Environment/Nature%20conservation/Pages/Tree%20Preservation.aspx>

All trees or groups of trees within a Conservation Areas which have a stem diameter 7.5cm (or 10cm if part of a group), measured at 1.5m above ground level are also protected and will need six weeks prior notification to the Council in writing of your intention to undertake works to these trees.

To find out whether or not a tree is protected you can contact the Council's Call Centre on 01480 388388.



## 4 Wildlife

The habitat of all nesting birds and bat roosts are protected are protected by the Wildlife and Countryside Act, 1981 (amended 1984), strengthened by the Countryside and Rights of Way Act, 2000. With regards to birds this means that the felling or pruning of trees must be carefully carried out to avoid any risk of disturbing nesting birds particularly between the months of March to August inclusive.

Even a dead or dying tree may provide a habitat for plants and wildlife protected under the Wildlife and Countryside Act, 1981. Most notably, trees with hollows and crevices may well provide important natural roost sites for many bat species and nest sites for birds. A cautious approach is required when dealing with trees which provide suitable habitat potential.

All native bats are European Protected Species and it is an offence to kill or destroy such a species or to damage or destroy their breeding site or resting places. When proposing to fell or carry out other work to such a tree, care must be taken to ensure that there are no bats or roost sites present before commencing the work. If in any doubt that a bat roost may be present contact Natural England or the Bat Conservation Trust whose details are at the end of this Guidance note. If a bat is discovered by a contractor whilst undertaking work, all work must cease immediately and the site made safe, then Natural England or the Bat Conservation Trust should be contacted immediately. For guidance refer to Arboricultural Association Guidance Note 1 Bats In The Context Of Tree Work Operations. A new British Standards Institution guide is currently in draft.

Pruning trees can affect wildlife in more subtle ways, very manicured trees provide less opportunities for wildlife and where possible it is good to leave some deadwood in trees and allow dense crowns and low branches to develop to provide cover. Where trees are pruned or felled it is also important where appropriate to leave some of this dead wood around as a habitat for small mammals and insects.



## 5 Timing of pruning

Although most minor pruning can be carried out at anytime of the year, where possible it is desirable to avoid pruning operations when deciduous trees are coming into leaf and in the autumn when they are losing their foliage as the trees ability to close wounds is reduced and the tree can lose valuable energy reserves if pruning occurs before the leaves are shed. This is particularly important if it is necessary to carry out heavy pruning or work on older trees.

The pruning of maples (including sycamore), lime and birch should be avoided in the early spring when the sap is starting to rise as they will bleed sap from the pruning wound. This bleeding is harmless, but wastes the trees resources and is unsightly.

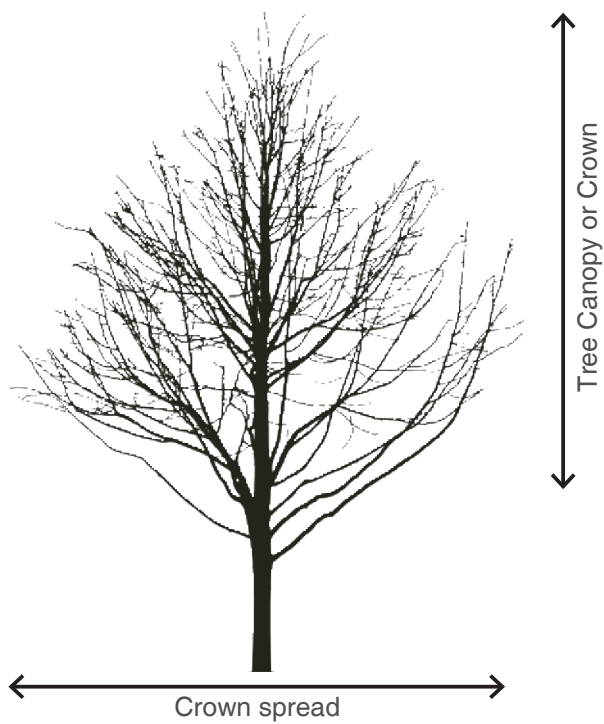
The following fruiting and ornamental flowering trees are best pruned after flowering between June and August: Plums, especially the cultivar 'Victoria', cherry, peach, apricot, pear, apple, laburnum, Portugal laurel and rhododendron.

Walnut species should not be pruned in spring and are best pruned in July and August.

This information is by no means exhaustive; for further information refer to BS 3998 2010.

## 6 Pruning specifications

Generally most trees that need to be pruned will require one, or a combination of the following pruning techniques. Usually between 15-20% of the crown is removed at any one time. Although in some cases the maximum of 25% may be recommended where justified.



*Figure 1: Crown or canopy of tree*



## 6.1 Branch removal and appropriate pruning points

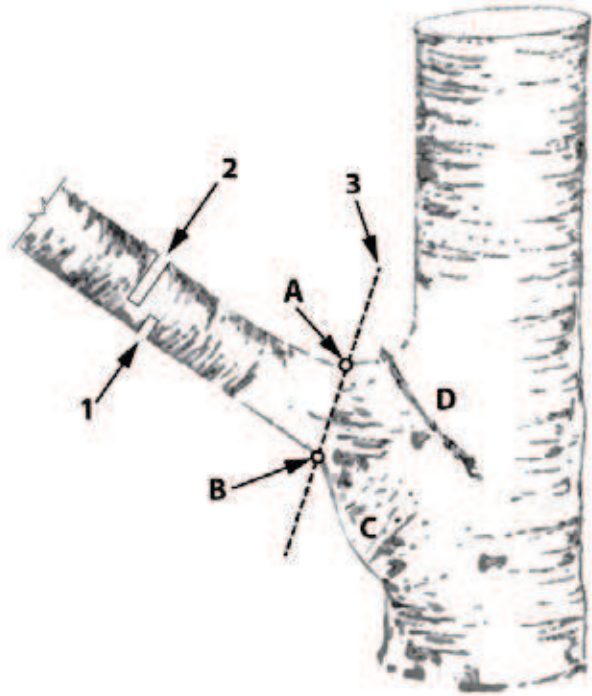


Figure 2: Branch removal

If the branch is a large one, it is best to reduce it in segments to prevent it falling dangerously or damaging the tree by tearing the bark. Following Figure 2:

1. Begin removing each segment with a cut up about a third of the way from the underside of the branch (1).
2. Continue by cutting down about two-thirds of the way through the branch a little bit further up the branch (2). This should cause the branch to fall or allow it to be removed under control with minimal damage to the tree.
3. Once most of the branch has been removed, make the final cut (3) across the branch collar (A-B) to remove the stub. Leave the collar intact, or this could be the cause of infection to the tree.
4. Make sure the tree is not cut further than the end branch collar (D) – this will cut through the tree's barrier zones and make it extremely prone to disease.

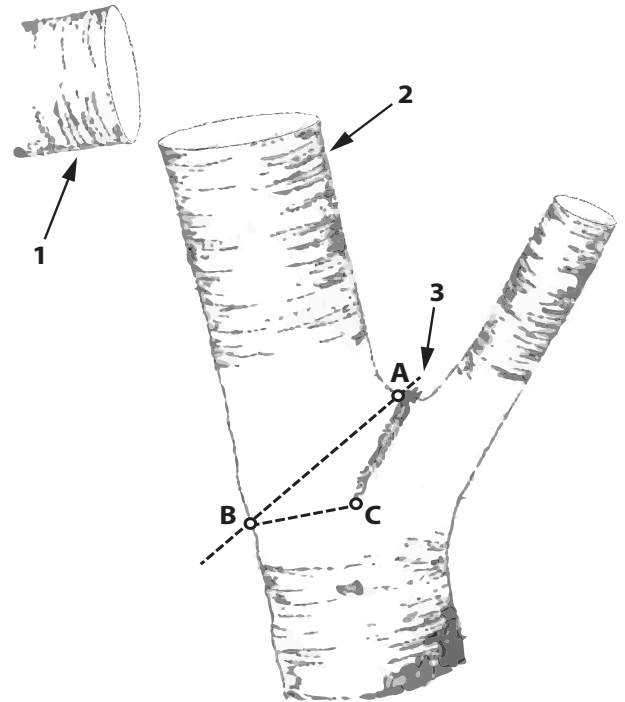


Figure 3 Reduction of a branch

1. When it is necessary to reduce the branch of a tree, cut from A to B in Figure 3: (3) after the top has been removed, (1 and 2).
2. Point B is at right angles to the main branch from point C, (the bottom of the branch bark ridge). The remaining branch should be at least one third the diameter of the stem to be cut.

Where a limb, branch or leader is to be shortened it shall be cut back cleanly to a vigorous side branch finishing with a sloping cut leaving the branch bark ridge and branch collar intact. The remaining branch should be at least 1/3 the diameter of the branch removed. This is to reduce the likelihood of decay or die-back as the lateral branch should be able to produce enough energy to keep the parent branch alive and there should be enough growth regulators present to suppress excessive shoots.

## 6.2 Formative pruning

**Description:** Pruning to improve the shape and form of young trees.

**Reason:** This type of pruning is usually completed when the tree is still relatively young. The main objective of this type of pruning is to encourage the formation of good stem and branch structure, by improving the orientation and spacing of branches and removing any potential weak structures that may fail later in life. Well planned, formative pruning during the establishment of a young tree can reduce the need for pruning later on. Formative or structural pruning can be completed on semi-mature trees, but should be avoided on mature specimens.

**Specification:** Remove or reduce any competing leading shoots to leave one strong, dominant leader. Rubbing, diseased, dead, congested or weak branches must be removed along with epicormic and basal growth on the main stem. Low branches pointed in undesirable directions must also be removed. All work carried out should take into account the species concerned, and the natural form of the tree. Formative pruning should only be carried out with suitable hand tools, such as secateurs, loppers, pull or bowsaws.

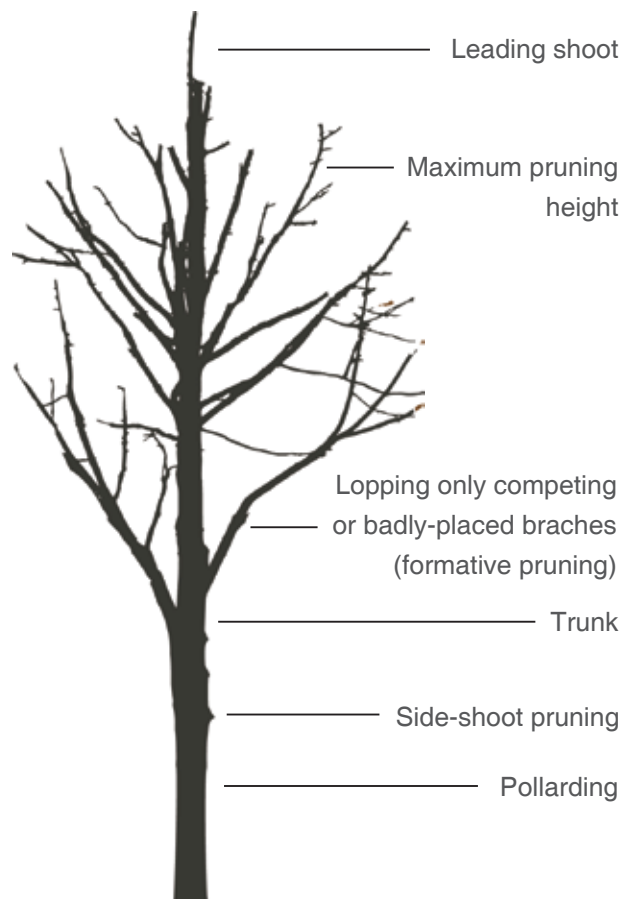


Figure 4: Formative pruning



### 6.3 Crown thinning

**Description:** Crown thinning is the removal of a proportion of secondary and small live branch growth, throughout the crown, to produce as far as possible an even density of foliage around a well spaced and balanced branch structure (see Figure 5). It includes the removal of dead, dying, diseased, crossing, crowded and weakly attached branches of low vigour. Merely removing secondary growth along the limbs and leaving dense branch ends is not an acceptable practice.

**Reason:** Crown thinning reduces the density of the crown without altering the shape of the tree. Thinning allows more light to pass through the crown therefore reducing shading and a more open crown reduces wind resistance.

**Specification:** The estimated percentage of crown to be removed is normally between 10% and 25% dependent on the circumstances. Most branches removed during a thinning operation are less than 4cm in diameter.



Figure 5: Crown thinning

## 6.4 Crown lifting

**Description:** Crown lifting, is the selective reduction and removal of the lower branches. The excessive removal of low branches can lead to the development of poor trunk crown balance, where a tree may become top heavy. Also large wounds around the main trunk of a tree could potentially allow the development of decay which can coalesce and reduce the long term integrity of the trees main supporting structure.

**Reason:** To allow space under the tree for light, people, vehicles or buildings.

**Specification:** Where possible the number and size of pruning wounds should be limited and well spaced, so there is less chance of decay pockets coalescing combining to form larger cavities within the stem of the tree. To avoid lack of balance after crown lifting the crown should retain at least 85% of the tree original un-pruned crown. Some circumstances may require a greater percentage of the trees crown to be lifted. In such circumstances the Council's tree officer should be consulted before the work is carried out. Some of the problematic issues described above can be addressed by the reduction of branches to lateral/secondary growth leaving a flowing outline rather than their complete removal

Crown lifting is specified as the height from the ground to the desired height of lowest secondary branch. Trees situated along public highways must be maintained at the following minimum clearance height:

- a) Over footpaths/paved areas - 2.4 metres over kerb height
- b) Over carriageways – to allow for the free movement of traffic, or 5.2 metres over kerb height



Figure 6: Crown lifting



## 6.5 Crown reduction

**Description:** Crown reduction or shaping, involves the systematic reduction of peripheral branches to decrease the height or spread of a trees crown area to leave a flowing line.

**Reason:** This is normally specified to reduce the contact between buildings and other infrastructure or to rebalance a tree after storm damage.

**Specification:** When a branch is pruned the diameter of the remaining branch should be at least 1/3 of the diameter of the branch that is removed. The natural shape and form of the species should be maintained and the tree should be balanced and uniform on completion.

Crown reduction work can be specified to cover every branch within a trees crown or it can be limited to just one. However the desired effect should be accomplished by pruning back to an appropriate pruning point (see section 6.1).

This allows more effective healing of the pruning cuts and maintains a good tree architecture. Inappropriate pruning can effectively destroy a trees natural shape, cause decay, an increased risk of failure, and result in a proliferation of new growth significantly increasing maintenance requirements.



Figure 7: Crown reduction



## 6.6 Pollarding

**Description:** Pollarding describes the practice of regulating tree size and shape by training of young trees. It is very different from crown reducing and topping/lopping. To be done correctly, the desired shape is determined when the tree is young, by topping once to establish the desired framework. Once the desired framework is established, all sprouts or shoots are cut back to their base on a cyclical basis between one and four years. It is a methodology rather than a one off operation.

**Reason:** Pollarding is a way to control the ultimate size and shape of a tree, and to allow maximum leaf cover in limited spaces.

**Specification:** All regenerated sprouts/shoots are removed right back to their base, without cutting into the swollen tissue below the origin of the buds (knuckle) over the entire pollard. (With the objective of producing a quantity of vigorous shoots from the knuckle) All pollarding operations to be completed using hand tools, not power tools.



Figure 8:Pollarding



## 6.7 Topping

**Description:** Is the hard pruning, of a mature or semi mature tree, involving the removal of nearly all of the tree's branches and foliage. This is nearly always considered unacceptable practice and should not be confused with pollarding. This type of pruning destroys the tree's natural shape and introduces decay. This work encourages the development of a weak branch structure and can kill some species, such as beech.

**Reason:** This type of work will only be acceptable in extremely rare cases, for example where a tree has become hazardous and cannot be made safe by normal pruning practice but the retention of the stem or tree in a much reduced form is desirable for biodiversity. Where a tree has previously been topped it may be acceptable to prune back to the previous pruning points as with pollarding.

**Specification:** Topping is considered as a last resort to avoid felling. It should rarely be specified and where it is, should deal with individual trees.

## 6.8 Restoration pruning

**Description:** The principles behind this type of pruning are similar to those used in structural or formative pruning on establishing trees, but more care is required due to the maturity of the specimens involved. Restoration pruning may involve the training of young epicormic shoots to form new branches and allow the reestablishment of new areas of crown. It is therefore important to provide a more detailed pruning specification, which may involve the identification of a specific area of the tree's crown or even a particular branch.

**Reason:** Restoration pruning is necessary where a tree has been damaged, poorly pruned or where a once regular management regime has lapsed, resulting in the formation of poor structural features. This is often a more appropriate pruning option than re-topping previously topped trees.

**Specification:** This type of pruning is likely to need planning over a longer time frame so that the percentage of crown affected is limited to (perhaps only 10%) of a tree's leaf area at each pruning operation.

## 6.9 Crown Cleaning and dead wood removal

**Description:** The removal of dead, dying or diseased branches, stumps, snags, broken branches, rubbing branches, unwanted epicormic shoots and climbing plants etc.

**Reason:** This type of pruning is used where a tree is being maintained as a specimen within the context of a formal park or garden. Here the removal of dead, dying, diseased, detached or broken branches is specified to improve crown appearance and the overall tree aesthetics. The removal of such branches may also be considered desirable where they represent a risk to persons or property. However, the formation of dead wood within the crown of a tree is part of the natural system of tree life and should not be considered to be a negative thing that has to be removed to maintain healthy tree growth, it is also important to remember that dead wood is an essential habitat for a large number of organisms in the ecosystem in which the tree lives. So it is important to consider that any removal of dead wood from the crown could potentially be detrimental to the continued viability of the ecosystem in which the tree lives.

**Specification:** This is achieved by systematically climbing throughout the crown of the tree. Cuts into live wood should be avoided when removing dead branches and stubs. Damage to the branch collar and callus tissue should be avoided when carrying out this operation.

## 6.10 Removal of epicormic shoots and basal growth

**Description:** Epicormic growth is the twiggy shoot growth which develops from adventitious buds under the surface of the trees bark and which develops more readily on some species such as lime and sycamore. It often grows from the base or stem of the tree but can also develop within the crown as a reaction to heavy pruning or as a reaction to a decline in the trees health resulting from a number of causes including root damage and the impact of pest and disease.

**Reason:** This growth, particularly around the base of the tree can cause an obstruction where it is close to footpaths, driveways or the road. Also it may be removed for aesthetic reasons. This type of maintenance will often have to be done annually as the shoots soon re-grow.

**Specification:** Epicormic growth less than 20mm in diameter should be pruned cleanly back to its point of origin, avoiding damaging the bark of the tree. Growth greater than 20mm should be cut back to avoid damage to the branch bark ridge and collar. This must be carried out using a sharp handsaw or secateurs. On no account should a chainsaw be used in this operation due to the nature of the small shoots adjacent to the bark. All shoots must be removed back to, but not into, the branch collar leaving no projections or exaggerating the size of the wound.



## 6.1 Felling

**Description:** The complete removal of the tree.

**Reason:** Felling will only be considered where pruning does not offer an acceptable solution. Where the risk of injury or damage is an issue a risk assessment of the tree will be undertaken. Felling may be required for the benefit of a group of trees for example it may be necessary to remove diseased trees or to thin out a group of closely planted trees to provide light and space to benefit the strongest individual trees. More detailed guidance on making decisions in relation to felling is given in Guidance Note 2: Guidance for Tree Management.

**Specification:** To cut the tree as close to ground level as possible, unless otherwise specified, sometimes it is desirable to level a taller stump to avoid creating a trip hazard where the tree is in a footpath. It may be necessary to remove the stump. The method of removal should consider the impact on the retained trees. See 6.1.2 for advice on tree stump removal.

## 6.12 Stump removal

**Description:** Removing the stump of the tree and the main roots near the stump.

**Reason:** The stump may be removed for aesthetic reasons so the ground can be reinstated or to remove a tripping hazard.

**Specification:** Stumps can be removed either digging out or by using a suitable stump grinding machine. The stump and exposed buttress roots are normally chipped to a depth of 300mm below the surrounding surface. Consideration should be given to the potential presence of underground services such as electricity cables and in many cases it will be necessary to contact public utility companies in order to identify any services, which may be present.

## 6.13 Stump treatment

**Description:** Treating stumps of felled tree with herbicide to prevent re-growth.

**Reason:** Where stumps are to be left in situ it is sometimes desirable to treat the stumps to prevent them re-growing. This re-growth is more likely in some species than others, for example poplar, willow, lime and sycamore will often shoot again from the stump where as this rarely occurs in conifer species. Stump treatment should not be undertaken where there is a group of trees of the same species growing together, as the herbicide may be translocated from the stump to the roots of a live tree via a root graft. This could potentially kill a neighbouring tree.

**Specification:** This should be undertaken as soon as possible after the tree has been felled to be effective. Approved stump killing herbicide must be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications by suitably trained and qualified personnel in possession of a current certificate of competence under the control of pesticides regulations 1986. It should be applied by drilling holes in the outer cambium layer of the stump, which should then be bunged or covered to keep water out to prevent the chemical being diluted.



## 7 Getting Help

### 7.1 Sources of advice

Options for obtaining further help and advice include:

- Employing an arboricultural consultant or Contractor: Choosing an Arboricultural Consultant and Tree Contractor leaflets
- Contacting HDC Call Centre 01480 388388
- Contacting the Arboricultural Association <http://www.trees.org.uk/>

### 7.2 Employing a Tree surgeon

Tree work requires a high degree of skill and should only be undertaken by well trained and competent Arboricultural Contractors (also sometimes know as Arborists or Tree surgeons), many of whom are well trained and experienced, and will be able to undertake tree work to the standards set in this document. They can also assist you in determining what type of pruning is necessary to maintain or improve the health, appearance and safety of your trees. If tree work is not undertaken properly it could not only lead to lead to injury to people and damage to property but cause permanent damage to trees. The Council produce a Guide to Employing a Tree Contractor, which is available as a down load from the Councils website and leaflets on Choosing an Arboricultural Consultant and Tree Contractor.

## 8 Summary

- Consider whether the work is really necessary and that the type of pruning specified will achieve the desired aim.
- Check whether consent is required from the Council before commencing with tree works.
- The presence of nesting birds and bats and other wildlife should be considered before undertaking work.
- No more than a maximum of 25% of a trees crown should be removed in a single operation.
- Tree work should only be undertaken by a qualified, competent and insured Arboriculturalists.
- Poor pruning often leads to increased maintenance, risk of failure, and increased future cost.

## 9 More Information

### For Further information contact

Huntingdonshire District Council  
Pathfinder House  
St Mary's Street  
Huntingdon  
PE29 3TN  
Tel: 01480 388388

### Useful Contacts

Arboricultural Association Tel: Tel +44 (0)1242  
522152  
[www.trees.org.uk](http://www.trees.org.uk)

Bat conservation Trust Tel: 020 7627 2629  
Bat Helpline: 0845 1300 228 (local rate)  
[www.bats.org.uk](http://www.bats.org.uk)

British Standards  
020 8996 9001  
[www.bsstandards.co.uk](http://www.bsstandards.co.uk)

Department of Communities and Local  
Government  
020 7944 4400  
[www.communities.gov.uk](http://www.communities.gov.uk)

Huntingdonshire District Council 01480 388388  
[www.huntsdc.gov.uk](http://www.huntsdc.gov.uk)



## Useful Documents

British Standard BS 3998:2010 Tree Work

Town and Country Planning Act 1990.

Planning Practice Guidance Tree Preservation

Orders and trees in Conservation Areas

## Glossary

### **Basal shoot (a root sprout, adventitious shoot, water sprout or sucker)**

- is a shoot or cane which grows from a bud at the base of a tree or shrub or from its roots.

### **Branch collar**

- the attachment structure in woody plants that connects a branch to its parent branch or to the trunk.

### **Epicormic growth**

- a shoot growing from an epicormic bud which lies underneath the bark of a trunk, stem, or branch of a plant

### **Leader**

- the primary stem of a plant, usually the top stem



## **3.2 Guidance Note 2: Guidance for Tree Management**

### **1 Purpose of the guide**

These guidelines are intended as a supplementary note to accompany the Tree Strategy and aims to demonstrate in a transparent manner how the Council acts in caring for our own trees and our dealings with private trees protected by legislation. We outline Huntingdonshire District Council's approach to tree management and describe in broad terms, situations where we are likely to consider pruning, felling or other forms of tree management appropriate. The types of tree work that are normally considered acceptable as good practice within the authority are described in more detail in Guidance Note 1, Guidance for works to trees.

### **2 Introduction**

Work to trees is often necessary to ensure they are maintained in as healthy and attractive condition as possible. The guidance identifies typical situations where the different types of tree work are applicable, though each tree will always be assessed on its merits. Work to our trees will be carried out by appropriately qualified and experienced staff or by an approved Council contractor and will be in accordance with current UK and EU legislation, guidance, British Standards and Codes of Practice, where they apply.



### 3 Management programmes for Council trees

Trees in publicly accessible areas may from time to time require management. Tree management should include regular prioritised inspections and where necessary programmed maintenance work. This maintenance may include the removal of some trees, pruning of others and replacement planting, with the aim of maintaining the overall tree cover in a safe, healthy and sustainable condition.

The Council has an Arboricultural Team based within its Parks Section. The Team leader is responsible for inspection and management of Council owned trees. The management of Council owned trees is based on a combination of regular inspections and maintenance of some trees in response to requests for tree inspection and maintenance works. The aim is to gradually move towards a situation where most trees in Council ownership are recorded and included within a prioritised inspection and maintenance regime; however resources are limited and this may take some time to fully achieve.

### 4 Dealing with requests for work to trees managed by the Council

Requests for tree inspections and work from the public are received via the call centre. Other requests for inspections or works to trees come from other Council Officers and Councillors. All requests are recorded and prioritised according to urgency; with safety issues given the greatest weighting. Response times to a request vary dependent on the number of requests received at any time. The aim however is to undertake most inspections within 4 weeks of the request and the enquirer advised of the decision within 2 weeks of a visit. Where longer response times are anticipated the enquirer will be informed. Any tree works required will be programmed dependent on its urgency, appropriateness and availability of resources. Some tree works may be recommended for inclusion within existing programs of works.

All tree works recommended will be guided by Council policy and the Council's Guidance Note 1: Guidance for works to trees.

However if an individual is unsatisfied with the decision and following further discussion with the Arboricultural Team leader an agreement cannot be reached a formal complaint can be made using the Council's existing procedures - *How to make a complaint to the Council*

## **5 Consultations regarding works to Council managed trees**

The aim of the Tree Strategy and its policies is to set the standards and guidelines that the Council will work to when managing trees.

However where proposed tree works are considered to be of particular public interest or where there are special circumstances and the proposed works deviate from the normal standards public consultation may be undertaken. Generally pruning works within the Councils guidelines will not require public consultation.

Where large scale work is to be carried out, such as woodland felling, or the thinning of a shelter belt as part of routine management, local residents, Ward Councillors, and any other local groups, such as Parish and Town Councils will be informed before works commence. Any responses will be considered prior to works commencing.

Where trees present an immediate hazard such that felling is the only practical urgent solution it may not be possible to inform interested parties before the work is carried out. However when tree removal is proposed as part of planned management or as an agreed request for work, the local ward Councillors, Parish Councils and residents who live close to the tree/s to be felled will be informed before works start.

## **6 Dealing with Tree Preservation Order applications and Conservation Area notifications**

When dealing with trees which are protected by the Town and Country Planning Act, 1990 by virtue of a Trees Preservation Order or location within a Conservation Area, the Council will follow the statutory procedures and timescales for dealing with applications and notifications. Existing national procedures exist for the right of appeal in relation to these trees, and no other local procedure is required. Refer to guidance: Tree Preservation Orders and trees in Conservation Areas

When the Council receives an application to undertake work to trees protected by a Tree Preservation Order it has 8 weeks to make a decision and in the case of Conservation Area notifications it has 6 weeks from the date they are received to form a view on the appropriateness of the work. These applications and notifications are entered on a register which is available for the public to view and the applications are circulated on the weekly list of planning applications. Applications can be viewed on the Council's Public Access system

If the Council believes that the work proposed by a Conservation Area notification is inappropriate it may negotiate an agreed compromise or, to prevent inappropriate works proceeding, the Council can make a Tree Preservation Order in respect of the tree or trees in question. The Council is only likely to undertake this action where appropriate trees works cannot be agreed with the applicant and the trees in question are of sufficient amenity to warrant inclusion within a Tree Preservation Order. When a Tree Preservation Order is made the tree owner has the right to object to the order. If the objection cannot be



resolved with the Arboricultural Officer the matter will be referred to the Development Management Trees-Sub Panel who decide whether the TPO is confirmed, confirmed with modification or allowed to lapse.

If an application to undertake works to a tree subject to a Tree Preservation Order is refused by the Council, the applicant has the right of appeal to the Secretary of State. If the appeal is valid a government inspector will visit the site to assess the case and decide on behalf of the Secretary of State whether the appeal is successful. The Council must abide by the Secretary of States decision in such cases.

Applications to undertake works to protected trees will be dealt using the same guidelines as for those set out for Council trees as outlined in this guide and Guidance Note 1: Guidance for works to trees.

## 7 When can trees be felled?

Huntingdonshire District Council will resist the felling of trees unless pruning and site management solutions have been considered and discounted as an alternative to felling. Each case will be judged on its merits. Tree felling will not be normally permitted for mature trees of high amenity value unless there is very clear justification for the work. There may be cases where the value of the tree, in terms of amenity value, cultural importance or biodiversity may override the reason to fell. Conversely where a tree is of limited amenity value or a relatively young specimen, the justification for felling will not need to be as vigorous as for a mature tree of high amenity. Trees in groups or in woodlands may be felled as part of a regime of thinning to provide more space for the retained trees to grow and provide more light so that ground flora and the shrub layer within the woodland can flourish.

The table at section 9 gives guidance on common situations where felling may be considered.

## **8 When can trees be pruned?**

Pruning, particular heavy pruning, should be avoided for the tree health reasons stated in Guidance Note 1, since any cutting can weaken the tree and allow decay organisms to enter exposed and vulnerable tissue, causing significant decay. Pruning of a healthy tree may cause it to respond by producing vigorous new growth and in certain species the harder the pruning, then the more vigorous will be the re-growth. Older trees do not tolerate pruning as well as younger ones and substantial pruning can be very damaging particularly in species which are not naturally tolerant of cutting. Tree pruning will not be permitted where the tree is of high amenity value and there is no justification for the work. Work will also be resisted if the tree has been pruned during the previous 2 years, unless there are special circumstances agreed by the Arboricultural Team Leader. As with felling, each case will be carefully judged on its merits.

The table at section 9 gives guidance on common situations where pruning may be considered and the type of pruning that is likely to be advised.

## **9 Guide to tree management**

The intention of the following table is to provide a guide to the types of pruning that will be acceptable to resolve common issues that arise in relation to trees. It also gives guidance of when trees may be considered for felling. It is impossible to be entirely prescriptive or to consider in detail all situations that may arise but it outlines the Council's general approach and will act as the basis of all day to day decisions in response to requests for tree work.



The types of tree pruning recommended are described in **Guidance Note 1: Guidance for works to trees**, which should be read in conjunction with this guide.

	Common reasons for tree work	Comments	Tree work solution	
9.1	<b>Risk reduction</b>		<b>Pruning</b>	<b>Felling</b>
9.1.1	<p>Removal of hazards or reduction of risks</p> <p>For example the removal of the entire tree, or dead or diseased branches, broken and hanging branches, or storm damage to make a tree safe, and to reshape and balance the crown</p>	<p>The two principal hazards are falling branches or the whole tree failing due to structural failure or root failure</p> <p>Dead and dying trees can be a hazard as the branches become brittle and are more prone to failure. This risk is detailed in Guidance note 6: Tree Risk Management</p> <p>Dead trees in suitable locations provide a valuable habitat, and may be made safe and retained, following a risk assessment. Risk reduction pruning will be considered before felling and removal. In informal areas dead and dying trees may be rendered into a safe condition by reducing the branch structure</p>	<p>A variety of pruning may be appropriate:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Removal of dead wood/ crown leaning</li> <li>- Crown reduction</li> <li>- Removal of selective branches</li> <li>- In some cases 'topping' may be appropriate if the stem can be retained safely for its biodiversity and wildlife value</li> </ul> <p>Any or occasionally a combination of the following, dependent of circumstances:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Crown thinning</li> <li>- Crown lifting</li> <li>- Crown reduction</li> </ul>	<p>If the risk assessment indicates that the tree is an unacceptable risk</p>
9.1.2	Trees causing a legal nuisance	<p>A "legal nuisance" is one that is actionable in law. A tree cannot be a "legal nuisance" to its owner. Examples include physical damage to another owner's property caused by roots or branches.</p> <p>Alleged structural problems must be carefully investigated, and evidence will be expected if it is alleged that a tree is contributing to damage to a property</p>	<p>Any or occasionally a combination of the following, dependent of circumstances:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Crown thinning</li> <li>- Crown lifting</li> <li>- Crown reduction</li> </ul>	<p>Felling only considered if the nuisance is severe and unlikely to be addressed by pruning</p> <p>Felling may be an acceptable management action, such as in a wooded area or if the tree is young and unsuitable for the location, and has high growth potential</p>
9.1.3	Trees giving rise to real or perceived fear of crime, trees which have provided access/cover for criminal acts, vandalism and harassment for local residents	The management of trees in instances such as this may be one of a variety of solutions considered	Typically making areas visible through crown lifting, thinning and coppicing may be required. This will vary depending on circumstances and location	Felling will only be acceptable as a last resort and where other solutions have been considered

	Common reasons for tree work	Comments	Tree work solution	
9.2	<b>Good maintenance and aesthetics</b>		<b>Pruning</b>	<b>Felling</b>
9.2.1	Structural or formative pruning to improve crown shape and branch structure. To avoid having to carry out more harmful pruning in the future or loss of tree due to poor form or structural weakness	<p>Works shall only be carried out to young or semi-mature trees. In exceptional cases structural pruning may be carried out on maturing trees, when there is a desire to retain trees with significant structural weaknesses to remove a risk of branch failure, or following storm damage</p> <p>Pruning for purely aesthetic reasons such as to balance the shape of the crown will only be undertaken in formal areas and only be a very light removal of the crown area - usually less than 15%</p>	<p>Usually one of the following types of pruning will be specified dependent on the circumstances:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Formative pruning</li> <li>- Restoration pruning</li> <li>- Selective branch removal</li> </ul>	Only if tree is of a very poor form and of low amenity value and pruning cannot achieve a desirable result
9.2.2	Disease prevention and control	<p>Occasionally diseases or other disorders may affect part of the tree population, and will need controlling. Trees may then need to be felled to prevent the spread of disease or disorder, such as Dutch Elm Disease, and Ash Dieback, to benefit the wider tree population</p> <p>In these cases the guidance of appropriate bodies such as Forest Research, and the Arboricultural Association will be followed</p>	Removal of infected limbs	Felling of diseased trees as appropriate and in accordance with guidance



	Common reasons for tree work	Comments	Tree work solution	
9.2	<b>Good maintenance and aesthetics</b>		<b>Pruning</b>	<b>Felling</b>
9.2.3	<p>Woodland or tree/shelterbelt /group management</p> <p>Thinning, coppicing and other similar operations being undertaken as part of an approved management plan to maintain woodland and promote good woodland and arboricultural practice</p>	<p>The felling of trees to thin out a small copse or woodland is desirable for maintenance of the area. This type of work is essential during establishment to reduce the number of young trees and to allow the best trees to flourish, encouraging healthy growth and development</p> <p>Sometimes tree removal from mature stands may be necessary to promote regeneration and improve the age structure</p> <p>It may be necessary to selectively thin groups of trees to remove non native, invasive, or just undesirable species to benefit the group as a whole in the longer term</p>	Removal of lower limbs of trees	Thinning by felling typically benefits the health, structure or biodiversity value of the group of trees as a whole
9.2.4	Wildlife habitat improvement	<p>Occasionally it may be necessary to fell trees to promote a particular habitat, for example to improve grassland or to encourage native tree species or desirable ground flora</p> <p>Other maintenance practices such as hedge laying and the creation of deadwood habitats may be appropriate to improve the biodiversity value of wooded areas</p>	<p>The type of pruning will be dependent on the circumstances and should be justified</p> <p>Innovative techniques such as coronet pruning may also be used</p>	The felling of trees will only be carried out when it is clearly justified. The wildlife value of the trees will always be taken into account



	Common reasons for tree work	Comments	Tree work solution	
9.3	Prevention of damage		Pruning	Felling
9.3.1	Trees too close to adjacent structures; branches growing and in contact with buildings, trees that are restricting access for repairs and maintenance of buildings, or authorised construction work	<p>When assessing planning applications the proximity of trees to proposed buildings will be a consideration</p> <p>However in some cases planning consent may be granted where it will be necessary to prune trees to allow construction, especially to allow access to site under the canopy of larger trees</p>	Crown or selective branch reduction or lifting as appropriate	Felling only considered as a last resort if the obstruction cannot be addressed by pruning or if the tree has a high growth potential and would be inappropriate for long term retention in that location
9.3.2	Trees in close proximity to walls and fences which are causing direct damage	<p>As trees grow the increasing girth of the stem and roots can displace walls and fences. Also the movement of branches may cause damage</p> <p>In some cases it is possible to realign, repair, or replace walls/fences bridging over root buttress or leave gap in the boundary to accommodate the tree. Solid boundary structures may also be replaced with hedges</p>	Removal or reduction of selective branches or crown lifting	<p>Where the tree is young and the potential for damage is foreseeable and unavoidable</p> <p>Where the damage is severe and alternative solutions without tree removal not possible</p>



	Common reasons for tree work	Comments	Tree work solution	
9.3	<b>Good maintenance and aesthetics</b>		<b>Pruning</b>	<b>Felling</b>
9.3.3	Trees growing close to and obstructing / likely to obstruct or interfere with above ground service equipment such as lighting columns, CCTV, overhead cables and road signs	<p>Tree branches may obstruct or become entangled with services equipment such as electricity lines, telephone cables or street lighting and signage</p> <p>Utility service providers have statutory powers to clear their operational equipment. Where this is the case discussion with the Council is advised to agree the most sensitive pruning regime possible</p> <p>New service locations should be agreed with Tree and Landscape Officers, and vice versa, to ensure future conflicts are avoided</p>	<p>Any or occasionally a combination of the following dependent of circumstances:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Crown lifting</li> <li>- Crown reduction</li> <li>- Selective branch removal</li> </ul>	<p>Where there is a young tree with a high growth potential in close proximity to equipment and regular and harmful pruning will be required to retain it in that location</p> <p>For mature trees only if alternative solutions cannot be found such as pruning or relocation of the service equipment</p>
9.3.4	Trees growing close to and likely to obstruct or interfere with underground services including drains, electricity, telephone cables and gas mains	<p>If drains are damaged and are leaking water, tree roots may be attracted to the moisture source and proliferate in the drains causing blockages. These can often be removed and the drains repaired without the need to remove the tree or undertake drastic root pruning</p> <p>Damage to underground cables is rare but access to these for maintenance sometimes requires excavation in the vicinity of the tree roots. Damage may also occur during the installation of new services in close proximity to existing trees. The guidelines of NJUG Chapter 4 should be followed where these works are required</p>	<p>Root pruning should only be undertaken where it is unavoidable and specified in agreement with the Arboricultural Officer or Arboricultural Team Leader</p>	<p>Felling will only be acceptable where essential works to services are required and access cannot be achieved without damaging roots to such an extent that the health and stability of the tree is uncertain</p> <p>In some case where a young tree with a high growth potential has established in an unsuitable location close to an underground service access point such as a manhole</p>

	Common reasons for tree work	Comments	Tree work solution	
9.4	Highway safety		Pruning	Felling
9.4.1	Obstruction to the public highway or growing low over footpaths, public rights of way or access to private property, gardens or open spaces where the public have access	<p>The Highways Authority can enforce the pruning or removal of a tree, including privately owned trees, obstructing the highway</p> <p>A minimum clearance of 2.1m should be maintained over public footpaths and 5.2m above the carriageway of adopted highways</p>	Crown lifting or selective branch reduction	Felling only considered if the obstruction is severe cannot be address by pruning



	Common reasons for tree work	Comments	Tree work solution	
9.5	<b>General nuisance</b>		<b>Pruning</b>	<b>Felling</b>
9.5.1	Trees blocking daylight from habitable rooms and gardens to a severe and unreasonable degree	<p>The seriousness of this effect is as variable as the perception of it. Various factors can affect the light reaching a property or garden including the aspect and other obstructions</p> <p>Pruning will normally only be carried out where the trees are a significant contributory factor and there is a reasonable chance that pruning will improve the situation. The effect of restricting light can sometimes be reduced by crown thinning and crown lifting. Although this may not increase the amount of light to the maximum level possible, it is usually a satisfactory compromise</p> <p>Shading of habitable rooms of property will be given more weight than the shading of the garden</p>	In most cases crown thinning, but occasionally crown lifting or reduction dependent on circumstances	Felling for this reason will normally only be acceptable where there is a dense group of trees and some trees can be removed to benefit the growth of the group as a whole, or when shading is having a significant detrimental impact upon residents use and enjoyment of their property
9.5.2	Trees causing a general nuisance which prevent the reasonable enjoyment of the home and garden	<p>In addition to shading, large trees can cause a number of other common complaints such as leaf fall, dropping of small twigs, seeds, berries etc</p> <p>Also insects and birds associated with trees can be a cause for concern. Honeydew, a sticky substance produced by aphids tends to adhere to surfaces below the tree and sometimes attracts wasps. Bird droppings can be an issue where the tree tends to attract large numbers of birds</p> <p>The same principles apply; pruning will normally only be carried out where the trees are a significant contributory factor and there is a reasonable chance that pruning will improve the situation</p>	<p>Any or occasionally a combination of the following dependent of circumstances</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Crown thinning</li> <li>- Crown lifting</li> <li>- Crown reduction</li> <li>- Removal of dead wood</li> </ul>	Felling for this reason will normally only be acceptable where there is a dense group of trees and the removal of some will benefit the group as a whole, or when shading is having a significant detrimental impact upon the residents use and enjoyment of their property

	Common reasons for tree work	Comments	Tree work solution	
9.5	Prevention of damage		Pruning	Felling
9.5.3	Trees affecting the reception of terrestrial, satellite and digital television signals	<p>Interference with signals is worse when the leaves are on the trees and in bad windy and rainy weather satellite and digital reception is more sensitive to interference than television reception</p> <p>In most cases, the situation can be significantly improved or solved by the relocation of the aerial or satellite receiving dish. Boosters are also available which can improve the reception significantly. These options are far cheaper and less destructive than the felling or pruning of a tree</p> <p>There is no legal right to TV reception and interference is not, at present, a legal 'nuisance' as defined in law</p> <p>Pruning will normally only be carried out where the trees are significant contributory factor and there is a reasonable chance that pruning will improve the situation</p>	<p>If works can be undertaken within guidelines in Guidance Note 1: Guidance for works to trees, the following may be considered:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Crown lifting</li> <li>- Crown reduction</li> <li>- Selective branch removal</li> </ul>	<p>Only if there are other reasons for removing the tree</p>



## 10 Summary

- The Council will endeavour to respond to all requests for tree inspections within 4 weeks and provide a decision within 2 weeks of the visit by the Arboricultural Officer.
- Work to Council managed trees will follow the guidelines set out in section 9 of this document and be prioritised dependent on urgency, appropriateness and availability of resources.
- Public notification will be undertaken at the discretion of Council officers and generally only when the felling of prominent mature trees is being considered and safety is not an overriding issue.
- All applications to undertake work to protected trees will be considered following statutory guidelines and within the statutory timescales.
- Pruning only with acceptable limits and to specifications outline in Guidance Note 1: Guidance for works to trees.
- Where appropriate a pruning solution will always be attempted in the first instance and felling only considered if this fails.
- Requests for pruning will be resisted if the tree has had some work carried out in the last 2 years.
- The amenity and importance of tree will be taken into account when considering the justification for works

## 11 More information

### For further information

#### Huntingdonshire District Council

Pathfinder House  
St Mary's Street  
Huntingdon  
PE29 3TN

01480 388388

### Useful Documents

Huntingdonshire District Council Complaints Procedure <http://www.huntingdonshire.gov.uk/Councils%20and%20Democracy/Council/Pages/complaints.aspx>

### 3.3 Guidance Note 3: Guidance for Trees and Development

#### 1 Introduction

Trees are a vital component of the built environment, adding variety and creating a more healthy and enjoyable living environment. Trees enrich our surroundings and are instrumental in enhancing quality of life. Apart from their visual amenity value, trees provide shade, help to absorb noise and provide a habitat for wildlife. The more general environmental benefits of trees include the filtering of air-borne pollutants, intercepting and reducing storm water run off, and the net production of oxygen. They also help to offset the urban heat island effect (an urban area that is significantly warmer than its surrounding rural areas due to human activities) by creating valuable shaded areas, and their presence has the potential to increase property values.

When considering proposals for development, it is important to take into account the effect they may have on existing trees, and to explore the opportunities for new planting.

This note sets out best practice for pre-application discussion, progressing the application, and subsequent construction phases. It is recommended that this document is read prior to contact with the Huntingdonshire Planning Service.

A partnership approach is required between the Huntingdonshire District Council (HDC) and the applicant's development team. A flexible approach by both parties within a clearly defined framework will lead to an efficient planning and implementation process resulting in a higher quality of built environment. The Council aims to develop sound working relationships with applicants and their agents when dealing with matters relating to trees on development sites.

Trees are at risk from the pressures of development. Damage can be sustained to both the above ground and below ground parts of trees.

Any failure to evaluate fully the impact of development at the earliest opportunity could lead to the loss of tree cover, which would inevitably create a poorer living environment.

Protecting the tree root systems is a key issue when dealing with trees and development. To try and ensure that damage does not occur, the British Standard (BS) Institute has introduced the concept of a Root Protection Area (RPA). The RPA is an area surrounding a tree that contains sufficient rooting volume to ensure the tree's survival. RPA dimensions will need to be agreed with the Council.

Diagrammatic shape and extent of a typical tree root system (at this scale, most of the root system would be too fine to depict)



Figure 9: Typical root pattern



It is a common misconception that trees have deep tap roots. Most roots will be found in the first 1 metre (40 inches) of soil and may spread well beyond the canopy line. Works within the RPA are generally prohibited. Even a small trench 0.5 metres (20 inches) deep to accommodate a cable or drain may lead to the loss of the tree.



## How can trees be damaged?

Damage to trees can occur during the demolition, construction and landscaping phases of a development. Examples of the most common ways damage is caused are as follows:

- Bark wounds or broken branches caused by machinery.
- Compaction of the soil from movement of heavy machinery.
- Root bark damage from site stripping or grading.
- Cutting of roots during excavation for foundations and services.
- Raising or lowering soil levels around trees.
- Raising the water table.
- The spillage of petrol or diesel, mixing of cement and the storage of materials which are toxic to trees, or machinery placed or operating beneath the canopy of a tree or within the tree's RPA.
- Burning waste materials close to the tree.
- Removal of branches to create space for scaffolding or access of heavy plant.

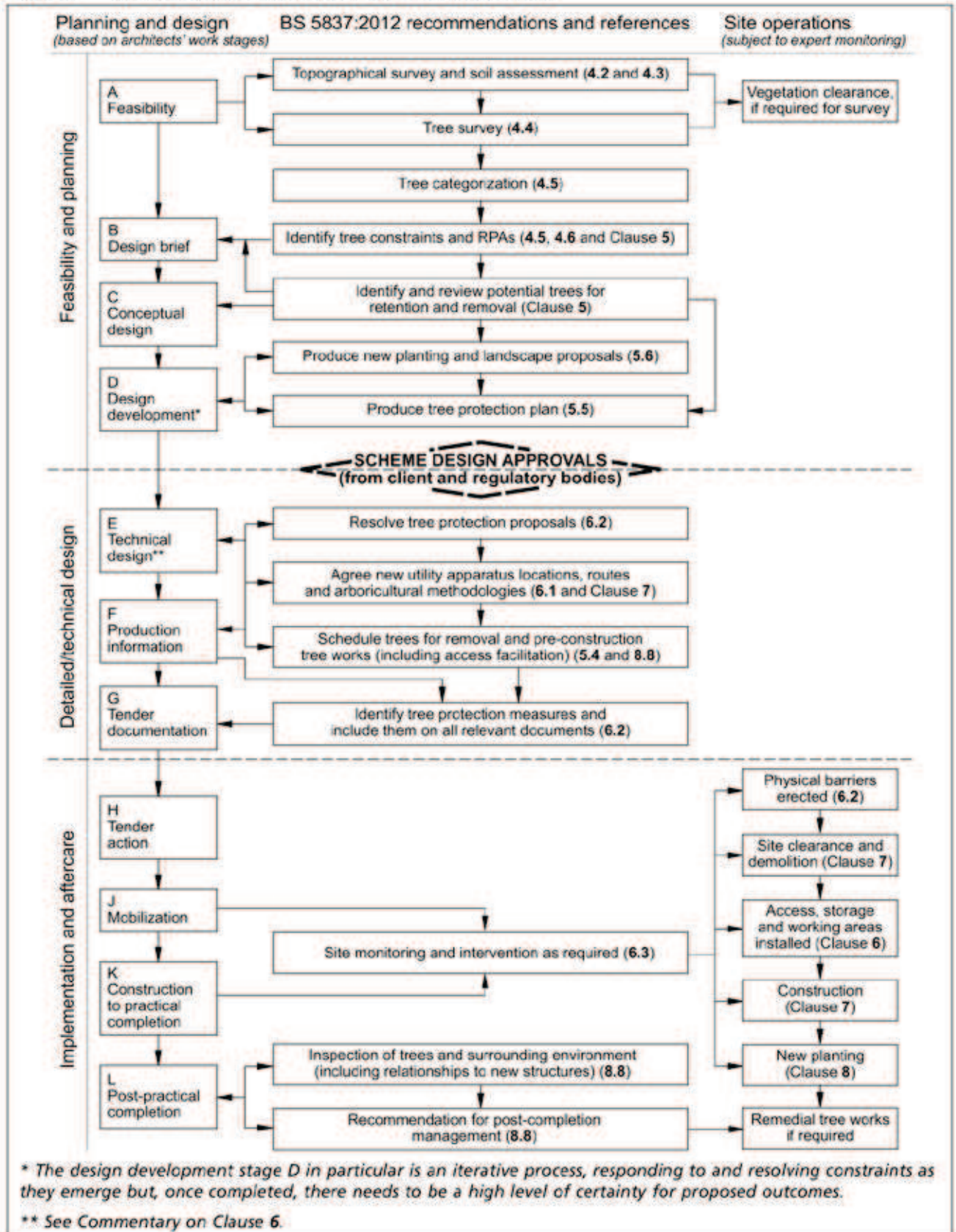
To integrate existing trees into a proposed development successfully, it will be a planning requirement to allow enough space in the design to enable trees to mature and flourish without outgrowing their surroundings and will not dominate adjacent new structures or create apprehension to new residents. Protection measures during the entire construction phase, including demolition, will also be required. Trees should be considered at the earliest design stage

to allow them to be successfully integrated into new development. A survey of trees on and adjacent to the site should be the first step in the design process.

The diagram, Figure 1, summarises the framework within the document British Standard 5837: 2012 'Trees in relation to construction – Recommendations'. This should be the principal reference document when considering new and existing trees on proposed development sites.



Figure 1 The design and construction process and tree care



## **2 The pre-application stage**

### **2.1 Initial considerations**

It is desirable for contact to be made with HDC at the earliest opportunity so that proposals regarding development may be discussed. It is often productive for a pre application consultation to take place with Council Officers at this stage, with an initial idea of the nature of the development in order to assess the possible impact on trees. The proposals for the site should not be fully developed at this stage. The presence of trees, and their possible retention, should be an important factor in influencing the layout of any development.

At this stage it is beneficial for the applicant to have already completed a Land Survey, Tree Survey and Tree Constraints Plan, and also to have an understanding of the ecological impact of the proposed development. This information will enable the Council to provide more accurate advice and guidance regarding acceptable development parameters.

### **2.2 Incorporating trees into the development**

Adequate consideration should be given to trees that are present on or adjacent to a site. The Council can require existing trees to be protected and retained, through the use of a planning condition, even when they are not the subject of a Tree Preservation Order. Development layouts should be designed to ensure that retained trees are able to grow and mature in the space provided. This will avoid future problems arising due to the trees' proximity to buildings, which would necessitate heavy and ongoing pruning that would be detrimental to their landscape value. Retained trees that are poorly positioned in relation to buildings can cause structural problems, distress or financial loss to occupants. Even if not affecting trees directly, development layouts will not be acceptable if they would result in undue pressure for future felling or unsightly heavy pruning.

New tree and shrub planting should be recognised from the outset as an integral part of any development, and should have regard to the national, regional and local Biodiversity Action Plans and Landscape Character guidelines. New planting should be purposefully designed to complement the proposed features of the development and existing features intended for retention. It is equally important to plan for the planting of trees on development sites that have no existing trees.



## 2.3 Arboricultural advice

Careful planning is essential to achieve a high quality development that fully considers all Arboricultural requirements. The inclusion of a suitably qualified Arboricultural Consultant on the design team and throughout the development process (i.e. from the survey phase to first occupancy) will help ensure that:

- Only trees suitable for retention are kept in accordance with the British Standard document BS 5837:2012 'Trees in relation to construction – Recommendations'.
- The juxtaposition of retained trees and proposed/existing buildings will not result in conflict.
- An appropriate level of information is submitted with a planning application.
- Retained trees are properly protected throughout the construction phase.
- Only trees of suitable species are incorporated in the landscape scheme.

The Arboricultural Association maintains a list of Registered Consultants (contact details at section 6 below).

## 2.4 Land surveys

Land surveys should be precise and show all relevant site features, including accurate location and identification of all trees, hedgerows and shrubs over 2 metres in height and/or with a stem diameter of 7.5cm measured at 1.5 metres above ground level. This survey should be made available as scale drawings (preferably 1:100 or 1:200) and in a commonly agreed digital format, if available, before any application for planning permission is submitted.

The survey should also include:

- Spot heights of ground level throughout the site.
- Location of trees on adjoining land less than half a tree height from the site boundary.
- The accurate canopy spread. If this is irregular it should be shown as such on the Land Survey plans.

## 2.5 Tree Surveys

Where developments are likely to affect existing trees on and off the site within 15m of the boundary where construction is likely to be proposed the Council will require the submission of a detailed tree survey, drawn up in conjunction with the land survey.

**The recommendations of the tree survey should be based on the condition and value of the trees as they are, and NOT on a preconceived layout for the site.**

All trees should be numbered on the land survey plan. Where appropriate, due to dense tree cover, tags with a corresponding number should be attached to all trees.

A tree survey should only be undertaken by a suitably qualified Arboriculturist with experience of trees on development sites and will be expected to meet the requirements of sections 4.2 to 4.4 of British Standard 5837: 2012 'Trees in relation to design, demolition and construction – Recommendations', (or the current revision of this document). It should assess all existing trees, including those on neighbouring land that may be affected by the development, and should include at least the following information:

- Species of tree.
- Height (in metres).
- Diameter of the trunk (measured at 1.5m above ground level on single stem trees and immediately above the root flare on multi-stemmed trees).
- Canopy spread in metres in relation to all four compass points (to be recorded on tree survey plan).
- Height of crown base (i.e. clearance above ground of lowest branches; in metres).
- Age class (young, middle age, mature, over mature, veteran)
- Assessment of condition (physiological and structural)
- Tree management recommendations (e.g. Remove deadwood, crown lift etc)
- Desirability for retention in accordance with Table 1 of BS 5837: 2012. Retention categories should be clearly differentiated on plans



## 2.6 Identifying trees suitable for retention (BS 5837:2012 Tree Categorisation)

Table 1 within BS 5837:2012 explains how trees should be categorised. Section 4.3 of the Standard describes how the cascade chart should be used. Category A and B trees should be retained. Category C trees should be considered for retention where they would not impose a significant restraint on development

**There is often a misconception that category 'C' trees, being those of lower quality and value, are dispensable. However, in certain situations it may be a requirement that category 'C' trees should be retained until new planting has established.**

## 2.7 Tree Constraints Plan (TCP)

Correct interpretation of the information from the land survey and tree survey is essential for the proper selection of trees suitable for retention and for identifying the constraints that these trees impose on the site now and in the future. The TCP is a design tool that illustrates the constraints imposed by trees both above and below the ground, and should be used to inform the design process.

The TCP should illustrate the Root Protection Area and Buffer Zones.

## 2.8 Root Protection Area (RPA)

This is the area identified around a tree where no development is allowed. This area is vital to avoid damage to the roots or rooting environment of retained trees. Section 5.2 of BS 5837: 2012 should be referred to for detailed guidance on the calculation of this area.

**It should not be assumed that building/excavating may take place up to the edge of the RPA. Adequate working space between proposed buildings and the RPA should always be incorporated into the design.**

Arboriculturalists should acknowledge that many trees that have grown within a built and developed environment will not have a regular rooting area, as a consequence of surface and sub-surface obstructions and constraints. In such circumstances the RPA may often need to be significantly altered and presented asymmetrically to account for unusual root system layouts. It may be necessary to quantitatively assess the extent of root spread by tree root sensitive excavations.

The RPA should be calculated by referring to the criteria in Section 5.2 of BS 5837: 2012, in particular Table 2.

## 2.9 Buffer Zones

A Buffer Zone is an area identified where it would be unreasonable to locate inhabited buildings. This should be established with regard to the ultimate size of trees in relation to proposed buildings. This Zone will allow trees to grow and mature naturally without unreasonably dominating buildings or gardens either now or in the future and should also take account of reasonable daylight requirements. It may be acceptable to locate uninhabited buildings (e.g. garages) or lightly loaded structures such as driveways, paths or hard standing within the buffer zone.

Not only the current but also the ultimate height and spread of a tree is a constraint due to its size, shading, dominance and movement potential in high winds. Therefore, the ultimate height and spread all trees to be retained should be annotated on the TCP.



### 3 Planning the development – the design stage

#### 3.1 Initial Consideration

All survey information and the Tree Constraints Plan should be given to the developer's design team who can then logically design the development in relation to the existing tree cover.

#### 3.2 Subterranean development

Whilst perhaps not yet a common proposal within Huntingdonshire, pressure to maximise the development potential on valuable town centre sites often means building elements are constructed below ground which often involves excavations from the side of the basement below the main footprint of the building. This can place the proposed structure close to retained trees both on site and within the adjacent third party land.

When considering the impact of such a proposal the principles outlined in BS 5837 2012 and set out above should be applied at the design stage and when assessing the likely impact of the proposal on the health and safety of the affected trees. Additional issues including ground moisture dynamics and the availability of water to the tree's root system and the stability of the excavation will need to be considered and included within a detailed arboricultural management plan to ensure that the retained trees are not damaged.

Whilst many things are possible the likely cost increase in terms of the development may be better spent on substantial new trees if the existing trees are of low quality.



### 3.3 New Tree Planting

Section 197 of the Town and Country Planning Act 1990 places a duty on the Local Planning Authority to secure the planting of new trees. HDC will secure the planting of new trees in locations where they will complement the surrounding local landscape and architecture. We will seek to ensure that the species of tree planted is suitable for each location.

The following factors should be considered when planning a tree planting scheme:

- Adequate space should be allowed for planted trees to reach their mature height and spread without causing nuisance to built structures and their occupants
- Predicted mature height and spread, crown density, propensity to shed honeydew, seeds or fruit etc. Wherever possible, large forest canopy tree species should be specified
- Suitability of planting positions in proximity to adjacent constructions, such as walls and buildings, to avoid the risk of structural damage occurring as trees grow and mature.
- Suitability of new trees within the built environment. They should complement the surrounding architecture, the historic environment and the local landscape in the long term. For example, formal terraced buildings require suitable formal planting; more irregular and varied planting may be more appropriate in a less formal built environment

Criteria other than potential size should be taken into consideration when choosing species – for example, colour of backdrop. A silver birch would not be clearly visible against a light background.

Suitability of tree species in relation to potential changes in climate, such as drought and predicted future increases in temperature should also be considered.

To enable trees to reach their optimum size, a sufficient soil volume should be available to the root system. The soil type, including drainage, should be such that tree roots are able to grow and function adequately.



### 3.4 Tree Protection Plan

Production of an accurate Land and Tree Survey and Tree Constraints Plan will enable the production of a Tree Protection Plan (TPP) for trees on or adjacent to the proposed development site.

The physical protection of trees during the construction process is the best way to ensure successful retention. This will impact on the available space for construction work and, consequently, on the siting of buildings. A Tree Protection Plan should be developed at an early stage and should contain the following information:

- Trees to be retained, clearly identified (e.g. by tree survey number) and marked with a continuous outline.
- Trees to be removed, clearly identified (e.g. by tree survey number) and marked with a broken outline.
- The precise location for the erection of protective barriers. This should enclose at least the area of the minimum Root Protection Area as identified in the Tree Constraints Plan, and should be marked on the plan as a construction exclusion zone.
- The precise location of other physical protection measures, (for example, temporary ground protection to prevent soil compaction).
- Specification details of the proposed protective fencing around the tree Root Protection Areas.  
**Tree protective fencing that can be easily moved (e.g. Heras panels mounted on rubber/concrete feet) is not acceptable.**  
See Figure 2, which provides an example of acceptable RPA protective fencing, in line with BS5837:2012. In certain instances on congested development sites it may be acceptable to position protective fencing within the RPA to allow the erection of scaffolding. See Figure 3.
- A schedule of pruning work identified in the tree survey either in accordance with good tree management, or precautionary, to prevent accidental damage during construction.
- Locations of areas proposed for positioning site huts, temporary toilet facilities and for the storage of building materials.

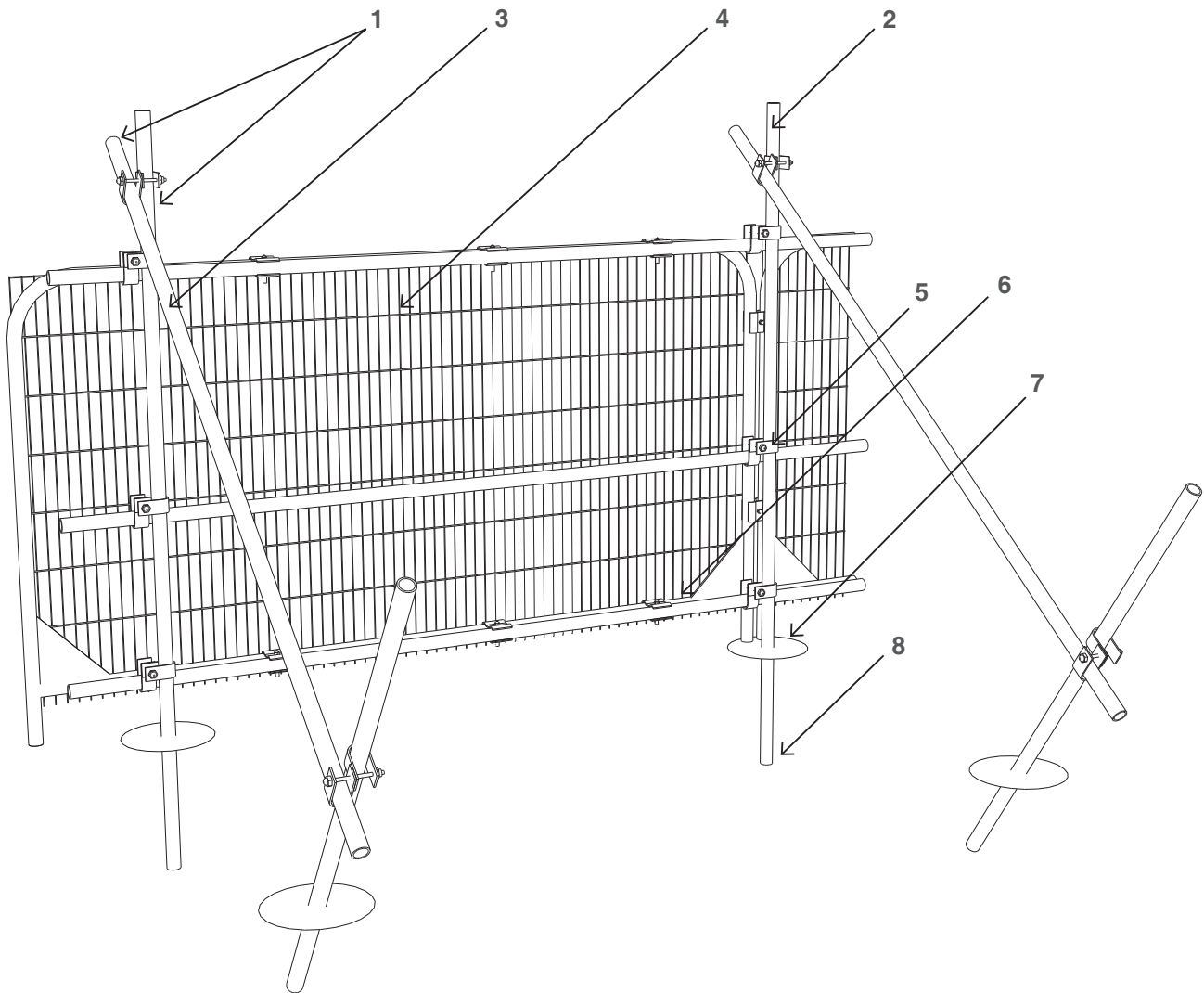


Figure 10: Protective barrier

- 1 Standard scaffold poles
- 2 Uprights to be driven into the ground
- 3 Panels secured to uprights with wire ties and where necessary standard scaffold clamps
- 4 Weldmesh wired to the uprights and horizontals
- 5 Standard clamps
- 6 Wire twisted and secured on inside face of fencing to avoid easy dismantling
- 7 Ground level
- 8 Approx 0.6m driven into the ground

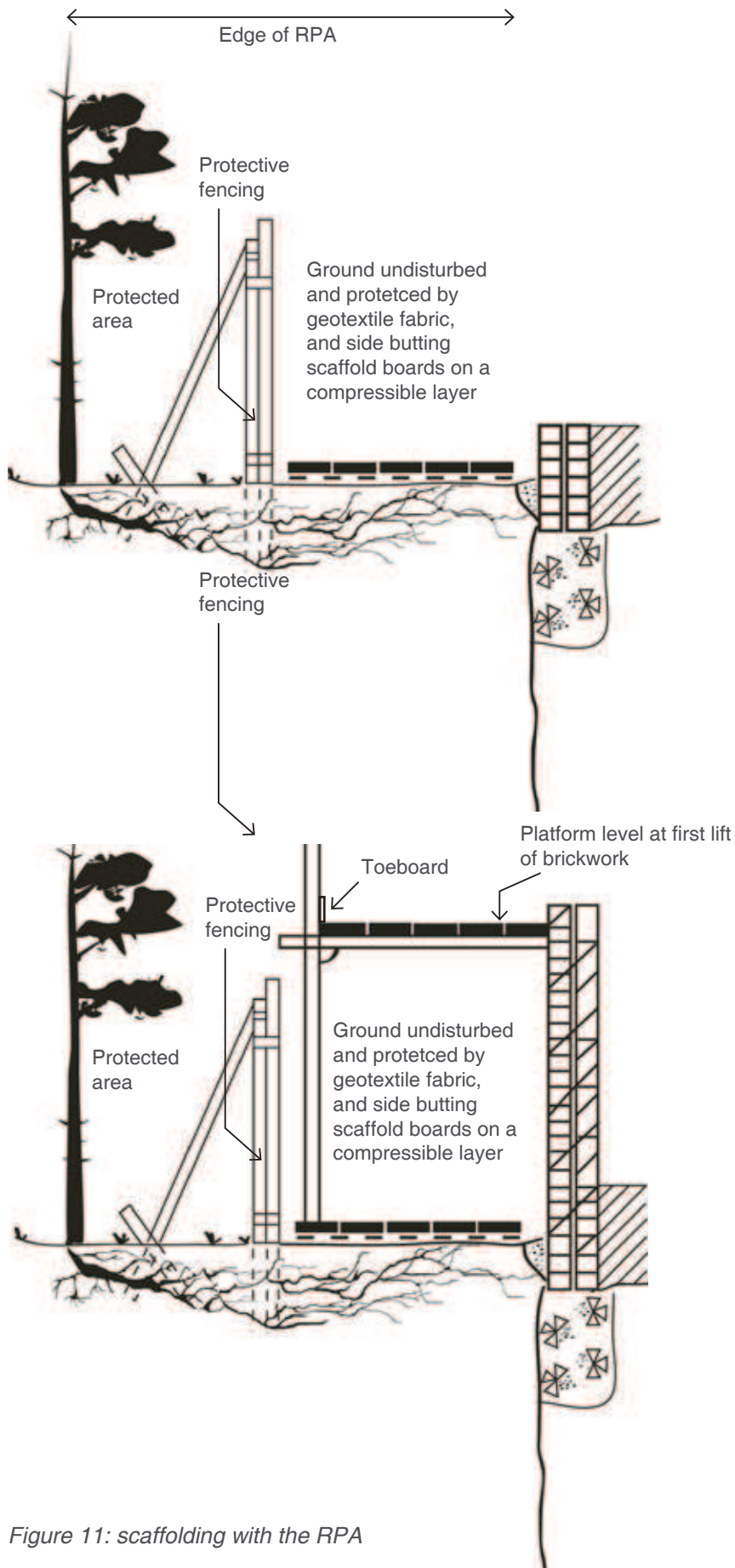


Figure 11: scaffolding with the RPA

### 3.5 Arboricultural Method Statement

On sites where trees are likely to be particularly vulnerable to damage the submission and approval of a detailed method statement for works near trees may be required. This is a particularly common requirement on congested development sites where working/storage space is very limited.

A method statement is likely to be required when one or more of the following aspects are a consideration at the time a planning application is submitted:

- Site construction access.
- Demolition of existing structures.
- Removal or replacement of existing surfacing.
- Groundworks directly adjacent to trees designated for retention.
- Positioning site huts and temporary toilets for use during the demolition/construction phase (including their drainage requirements).
- Space requirements for storing materials, spoil and fuel and the mixing of cement/concrete.
- Construction of underground services runs, bike sheds, bin storage areas.
- Specification and installation of temporary and permanent access paths/driveways near trees.
- Landscape operations (e.g. soil preparation within the RPA).
- Space requirements for piling rigs, foundation excavations and construction works.
- All changes in ground level, including the location of retaining walls, steps etc.

HDC will be guided by the recommendations contained within BS 5837 2012: Trees in relation to design, demolition and construction - Recommendations. This document provides essential advice. However, the Council will consider new methods or processes where these can be shown to improve the likelihood of tree retention on the site.



## 4 Planning permission – submission requirements

### 4.1 Important pre-application information

The following applies to all applications where there are trees on or adjacent to the proposed development site. Failure to submit the required information will prevent the application from being registered, or lead to a delay in determining an application.

Note: It may not always be necessary in all cases to provide all the information listed below, as the requirements of each individual development will vary. You are advised to seek pre-application advice if you are in doubt as to what may be required. If pre-application advice is not sought from the Local Planning Authority, applicants will usually be required to submit a Land Survey, Tree Survey and Tree Protection Plan with their planning application. If this information is not submitted it may delay the registration or determination of the application.

### 4.2 Submission Requirements

The following information should be submitted as part of the planning application:

- Land Survey (See section 2.4 above for guidance)
- Tree Survey (See section 2.5 above for guidance)
- Tree Protection Plan and Arboricultural Method Statement (AMS) (The content or necessity of an AMS will be dependent on the requirements of each individual application. See section 3.4 above for guidance.)
- Landscaping/tree planting scheme. (Tree planting proposals should include species and size of each tree measured by girth in cm, as should any proposed changes in ground levels)

The Council may request additional information before determining an application.

Once an application has been received by the Planning Department it will be necessary for a Council Arboricultural Officer to visit the proposed development site.

## **5 Implementation of planning controls**

### **5.1 Planning Conditions**

Experience has shown that a tree protection scheme is more likely to be successfully implemented if submitted and approved as part of the planning application.

Conditions will be attached to a planning permission, for example to ensure that that the Root Protection Areas of retained trees are adequately protected with tree protection barriers for the duration of the demolition/construction phase of the development.

Developers will be required to notify the Council's Planning Service prior to commencement of any works on site, including demolition. At this stage Council Officers will inspect the measures that have been put in place to protect trees during construction. Ad-hoc visits will be made throughout the construction phase to check that tree protection measures are still in place. The Council will exercise their powers of enforcement, where necessary, to ensure compliance.

The Council will not only expect developers to obtain the appropriate professional advice during the application stage but may attach a condition to ensure adequate supervision of the construction phase by the developer's own Arboriculturist.

If difficulties are experienced at any time during the construction process in complying with conditions relating to trees (e.g. in maintaining the distances for protective fencing in accordance with the Tree Protection Plan) and it is desired that the terms of any conditions be modified, it will be necessary to obtain the written agreement of the Council.

### **5.2 Failure to comply with planning conditions**

Where a breach of any tree protection related planning condition is identified, the Council will take appropriate enforcement action. This may include serving a 'Stop Work Notice' on a construction site where a contravention has occurred, or the instigation of legal proceedings under Section 210 of The Town & Country Planning Act 1990.



### 5.3 Commencement of site works

All operatives should be aware of all tree protection measures, and a copy of the approved Tree Protection Plan, any Arboricultural Method Statements and a copy of the planning consent with conditions should be available for inspection on the site. The following simple rules **MUST** be adhered to throughout the demolition and construction phases of the development:

Do not remove the protective fencing for any reason without prior approval.

- Repair any damage to the protective fencing immediately.
- Do not park or operate machinery and equipment near trees.
- Do not store materials within the RPA.
- Contaminants (fuel, oil and chemicals) must be stored at least 10m away from the protected area.
- Do not mix cement near trees.
- Do not light fires within 10m of any tree and beware of flames drifting towards branches.
- Do not secure temporary overhead cables or floodlights to trees.
- Do not change the ground level or excavate within the branch spread.
- If a retained tree is damaged in any way, the contractor should inform the Council's Arboricultural Officer or appointed Arboricultural Consultant immediately.

### 5.4 Removal of tree protection

No tree protection should be removed until the supervising Arboricultural Officer or developer's appointed Arboricultural Consultant has inspected the site. Failure to comply could prevent the full discharge of tree protection conditions.



## 6 More information

For further advice contact:

### Planning Department

Huntingdonshire District Council  
Pathfinder House  
St Mary's Street  
Huntingdon  
PE29 3TN  
Tel: 01480 388388

### Building Regulations

Contact: Building Control  
Tel: 01480 388388

## Other useful contacts

### Arboricultural Association

Tel: 01794 368717  
Web: [www.trees.org.uk](http://www.trees.org.uk)

### Department of Communities and Local Government

Web: [www.communities.gov.uk](http://www.communities.gov.uk)

### Department for Environment Food and Rural Affairs

Web: [www.defra.gov.uk](http://www.defra.gov.uk)

### Forestry Commission

Web: [www.forestry.gov.uk/ltwf](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/ltwf)



## Useful documents

British Standard BS3998: 2010 Tree Work Recommendations

British Standard BS5837: 2012 Trees in Relation to design, demolition and construction – Recommendations.

British Standard BS8206: Part 2: 1992 Code of Practice for Daylighting.

Building Research Establishment (1998). Site Layout Planning for Daylight and Sunlight; A Guide to Good Practice.

National House Building Council Standards Chapter 4.2 (as amended). Building Near Trees.

National Joint Utilities Group Publication: Volume 4 (as amended): Guidelines for the Planning, Installation and Maintenance of Utility Apparatus in Proximity to Trees.

Huntingdonshire District Council Tree Strategy.

## Appendix 1: The Legal Framework

Section 197 of the Town & Country Planning Act 1990 (“the Act”) places a duty on any Local Planning Authority:

(a) “To ensure whenever it is appropriate that in granting planning permission for any development adequate provision is made, by the imposition of conditions, for the preservation or planting of trees; and

(b) To make such Orders (Tree Preservation Orders, “TPO’s”) under Section 198 as appear to the Authority to be necessary in connection with the grant of such permission, whether for giving effect to such conditions or otherwise.

**In addition to the Act Huntingdonshire District Council is also guided by** current national Planning Practice Guidance for Tree Preservation Orders and trees in conservation areas.

Many trees in the District are already protected by TPO’s or by merit of their location within a Conservation Area. Under the Town and Country Planning Act 1990 (as amended) it is an offence to cut down, uproot or wilfully destroy/damage a protected tree, or to top or lop it in a manner which is likely to destroy it without the consent of the Local Planning Authority.

The Council regards unauthorised removal of or damage to protected trees very seriously and will not hesitate to prosecute whenever the circumstances warrant it.



## Appendix 2: Planning Policy and Guidance

The preservation of existing trees is a material consideration in the planning process, whether they are subject to existing statutory protection or not. Whilst trees may affect the development potential of some sites, in many cases they can be successfully integrated into new development schemes, adding to the overall value of a development.

The Huntingdonshire Tree Strategy highlights the importance of having an SPD for Trees and Development. This is documented as action plan point 2.4: 'Guidance Note 3: Guidance for Trees and Development' to be adopted within the LDF as SPD (Supplementary Planning Document) which is "To produce a Supplementary Planning Document to ensure the protection of trees to be retained on development sites and to require high standards of replacement tree planting and landscaping."

The Huntingdonshire Core Strategy (Huntingdonshire District Council, adopted 2009) documents contain a number of key policies and recommendations relating to trees which are a material consideration when determining planning applications. Council policy in respect of trees and development sites is set out in the 'saved' policies contained in Huntingdonshire Local Plan; some of the most relevant policies are summarised below:

- En5 Conservation Areas character
- En6 Design standards in Conservation Areas
- En9 Open spaces, trees and street scenes in Conservation Areas
- En18 Protection of countryside features
- En19 Tree Preservation Orders
- En20 Landscaping schemes for new development
- En22 Nature and wildlife conservation

### **3.4 Guidance Note 4: The Evaluation of Trees for Protection with a TPO**

#### **1 Introduction**

Section 198 of the Town and Country Planning Act 1990 provides that local planning authorities may make Tree Preservation Orders (TPOs) if it appears to them to be “expedient in the interests of amenity to make provision for the preservation of trees or woodlands in their area”. Section 333 of the Act gives authorities powers to vary and revoke TPOs, and government advice is that authorities should keep their TPOs under review and make full use of their variation and revocation powers.

When a tree is protected by a TPO, the authority’s consent must be obtained before it may be felled, lopped, pruned, or otherwise worked on. Certain exemptions apply, such as in the case of dead, dying or dangerous trees and trees obstructing the highway. Anyone can apply for TPO consent, and whenever an authority refuses an application for consent, or grants consent subject to conditions, the applicant has the right of appeal to the Office of the Deputy Prime Minister.

The Act does not define amenity, but Government guidance states that TPOs should be used to protect selected trees and woodlands if their removal would have a significant impact on the local environment and its enjoyment by the public. It advises local authorities to develop ways of assessing the amenity value of trees in a structured and consistent way.

This document is intended to provide a detailed and robust framework for decision-making when there are judgements to be made about the making, variation or revocation of TPOs. (Where the text refers to the making of TPOs the same considerations will equally apply to the variation and revocation of Orders.)



## 2 The System for Evaluation

### 2.1 Background

The impetus to take a fresh look at existing TPO suitability evaluation methods grew out of the preparation for a local authority client of a detailed Method Statement for reviewing Tree Preservation Orders. The key requirement was that the Method Statement should provide a reliable means of assessing trees for TPO suitability.

Having looked closely at what was already available, consultant arboriculturalists CBA Trees decided that there was considerable room for improvement, as each of the better-known existing methods has disadvantages.

Accordingly, the Tree Evaluation Method for Preservation Orders (TEMPO) was developed by CBA Trees as a direct response to the apparent continuing uncertainty about what attributes a tree should have in order to merit statutory protection by TPO.

### 2.2 Overview

TEMPO is designed as a guide to decision-making, and is presented on a single side of A4 as an easily completed pro forma. As such, it stands as a record that a systematic assessment has been made (ref. Tree Preservation Orders – A Guide to the Law and Good Practice “the Blue Book” 2000 para. 3.3).

TEMPO is unique in that it is the only method that considers all of the relevant factors in the TPO decision-making chain. In this connection, it is helpful to revisit the wording of the Blue Book:

‘Although a tree may merit protection on amenity grounds it may not be expedient to make it the subject of a TPO.’ (para. 3.4)

From this, it is clear that existing methods are inadequate, seeking as they do solely to consider the tree rather than any known threats to its retention. TEMPO corrects this omission by including an expediency assessment within the framework of the method.

Excluding the first section, which is simply the survey record and is thus self-explanatory, TEMPO is a three-part system:

#### **Part 1: Amenity Assessment**

#### **Part 2: Expediency Assessment**

#### **Part 3: Decision Guide**

These parts are set out and work as follows:

## **Part 1: Amenity Assessment**

This part of TEMPO is broken down into four sections, each of which is related to suitability for TPO:

- a) Condition**
- b) Remaining longevity**
- c) Relative public visibility**
- d) Other factors**

The first three sections form an initial assessment, with trees that 'pass' this going on to the fourth section. Looking at the sections in more detail:

### **a) Condition**

This is expressed by five terms, which are defined as follows:

#### **GOOD**

Trees that are generally free of defects, showing good health and likely to reach normal longevity and size for species, or they may have already done so

#### **FAIR**

Trees have some defects, which are likely to adversely affect their prospects; their health is satisfactory, though intervention is likely to be required. It is not expected that such trees will reach their full age and size potential, or if they already have their condition is likely to decline. However, they can be retained for the time being

#### **POOR**

Trees in obvious decline, possibly requiring major intervention to allow their retention. Health is significantly impaired, and it is likely to deteriorate. Life expectancy is curtailed and retention is difficult

#### **UNSAFE**

Trees with severe, irremediable structural defects, including advanced decay, and insecure roothold. Collapse or toppling likely in the near term, retention therefore impossible as something worthy of protection

#### **DEAD**

Self-explanatory



The scores are weighted towards trees in good condition. It is accepted that trees in fair and poor condition should also get credit, though for the latter this is limited to only one point. It is our view that unsafe and dead trees should not be placed under a TPO, hence the zero score for these categories.

Where a group of trees is being assessed under this section, it is important to score the condition of those principle trees without which the group would lose its aerodynamic or visual cohesion. If the group cannot be 'split' in this way, then its average condition should be considered.

Against each of these terms is set an assessment of TPO suitability. These assessments are designed to reflect the fact that trees which are dead, dying or dangerous (which may be equated to the 'Dead' – obviously – 'Poor' and 'Unsafe' categories above) are effectively exempt from TPO protection.



## b) Remaining longevity

This is expressed by five terms, which are defined as follows:

The reason that this is included as a separate category to 'condition' is chiefly to mitigate the difficulty of justifying TPO protection for veteran trees. For example, it is necessary to award a low score for trees in 'poor condition', though many veteran trees that could be so described might have several decades' remaining longevity.

Longevity has been divided into ranges, which are designed to reflect two considerations:

- It has long been established good practice that trees with less than ten years' remaining life expectancy are not worthy of a TPO (hence the zero score for this category)
- The further ahead one looks into the future, the more difficult it becomes to predict tree longevity: hence the width of the bands increases over time

Scores are weighted towards the two higher longevity ranges (40-100 and 100+), which follow the two higher ranges given by Helliwell (the Helliwell System being a method of placing a monetary value on the visual amenity provided by individual trees and/or woodland).

The Arboricultural Association (AA) publishes a guide to the life expectancy of common trees (AA 4). This guide is as follows:

### **300 years +**

Yew

### **200-300**

Common [pedunculate] oak, Sweet chestnut, London plane, Sycamore, Limes

### **150-200**

Cedar of Lebanon, Scots pine, Hornbeam, Beech, Tulip tree, Norway maple

### **100-150**

Common ash, Norway spruce, Walnut, Red oak, Horse chestnut, Field maple, Monkey puzzle, Mulberry, Pear

### **70-100**

Rowan, Whitebeam, Apple, Wild cherry, Catalpa, Robinia, Tree of Heaven

### **50-70**

Most Poplars, Willows, Cherries, Alders and Birches



The above should be considered neither prescriptive nor exclusive, and it is certainly not comprehensive. However, it should assist with determining the remaining longevity of most trees, in light of their current age, health and context.

It is important to note that this assessment should be made based on the assumption that the tree or trees concerned will be maintained in accordance with good practice, and will not, for example, be subjected to construction damage or inappropriate pruning. This is because if the subject tree is 'successful' under TEMPO, it will shortly enjoy TPO protection (assuming that it doesn't already).

If a group of trees is being assessed, then the mean age of the feature as a whole should be evaluated. It would not be acceptable, for example, to score a group of mature birches based on the longevity of the single young pedunculate oak present.

As with condition, the chosen category is related to a summary of TPO suitability.

### c) Relative public visibility

The first point of note in this section is the prompt, which reminds the surveyor to consider the 'realistic potential for future visibility with changed land use'. This is designed to address the commonplace circumstance where trees that are currently difficult to see are located on future development sites, with the visibility enhanced as a consequence.

The categories each contain two considerations: size of tree and degree of visibility. We have not attempted to be too prescriptive here, as TEMPO is supposed to function as a guide and not as a substitute for the surveyor's judgement. However, we have found that reference to the square metre crown size guide within the Helliwell System can be helpful.

Reference is made to 'young' trees are in the lowest scoring category. This is intended to refer to juvenile trees with a stem diameter less than 150mm at 1.5m above ground level. The reasoning behind this is that such trees may be replaced by new planting, though it is accepted that replacement specimen trees towards the upper end of the given size are expensive.

In general, it is important to note that, when choosing the appropriate category, the assessment in each case should be based on the minimum criterion.

Whilst the scores are obviously weighted towards greater visibility, we take the view that it is reasonable to give some credit to trees that are not visible: it is accepted that, in exceptional circumstances, such trees may justify TPO protection (Blue Book para. 3.3.1).

Where groups of trees are being assessed, the size category chosen should be one category higher than the size of the individual trees or the degree of visibility, whichever is the lesser. Thus a group of medium trees would rate four points (rather than three for individuals) if clearly visible, or three points (rather than two) if visible with difficulty.

Once again, the categories relate to a summary of TPO suitability.



## Sub-total 1

At this point, there is a pause within the decision-making process: as the prompt under 'other factors' states, trees only qualify for consideration within that section providing that they have accrued at least seven points. Additionally, they must not have collected any zero scores.

The total of seven has been arrived at by combining various possible outcomes from sections a), b) and c).

The scores from the first three sections should be added together, before proceeding to d) Other factors, or to Part 3: Decision Guide, as appropriate (ie depending on the accrued score). Under the latter scenario, there are two possible outcomes:

- 'Any 0' equating to 'do not apply TPO'
- '1-6' equating to 'TPO indefensible'

## d) Other factors

Assuming that the tree or group qualifies for consideration under this section, further points are available for four sets of criteria, however only one score can apply per tree (or group):

- 'Principal components of arboricultural features, or veteran trees' – The latter is hopefully self-explanatory (if not, refer to the Veteran Tree Management Handbook (Read 2000 for English Nature) The former is designed to refer to trees within parklands, avenues, collections, and formal screens, and may equally apply to individuals and groups
- 'Members of groups of trees that are important for their cohesion' – This should be self-explanatory, though it is stressed that 'cohesion' may equally refer either to visual or to aerodynamic contribution. Included within this definition are informal screens. In all relevant cases, trees may be assessed either as individuals or as groups
- 'Trees with significant historical or commemorative importance' – The term 'significant' has been added to refine the selection, but it is important to stress that significance may apply to even one person's perspective. For example, the author knows of one tree placed under a TPO for little other reason than it was planted to commemorate the life of the tree planter's dead child (incidentally, in over 25 years it has never failed to be in flower on the child's birthday). Thus whilst it is likely that this category will be used infrequently, its inclusion is nevertheless important. Once again, individual or group assessment may apply

- 'Trees of particularly good form, especially if rare or unusual' – 'Good form' is designed to identify trees that are fine examples of their kind and should not be used unless this description can be justified. However, trees which do not merit this description should not, by implication, be assumed to have poor form (see below). The wording of the second part of this is deliberately vague: 'rare or unusual' may apply equally to the form of the tree or to its species. This recognises that certain trees may merit protection precisely because they have 'poor' form, where this gives the tree an interesting and perhaps unique character. Clearly, rare species merit additional points, hence the inclusion of this criterion. As with the other categories in this section, either individual or group assessment may apply. With groups, however, it should be the case either that the group has a good overall form, or that the principle individuals are good examples of their species

Where none of the above apply, the tree still scores one point, in order to avoid a zero score disqualification (under Part 3)



## Sub-total 1

This completes the amenity assessment and, once again, there is a pause in the method: the scores should be added up to determine whether or not the tree (or group) has sufficient amenity to merit the expediency assessment.

The threshold for this is nine points, arrived at via a minimum qualification calculated simply from the seven-point threshold under sections a), b) c), plus at least two extra points under section d). Thus trees that only just qualify for the 'other factor' score need to genuinely improve in this section in order to rate an expediency assessment. This recognises two important functions of TPOs:

- TPOs can serve as a useful control on overall tree losses by securing and protecting replacement planting
- Where trees of minimal (though, it must be stressed, adequate) amenity are under threat, typically on development sites, it may be appropriate to protect them allowing the widest range of options for negotiated tree retention

## Part 2: Expediency Assessment

This section is designed to award points based on three levels of identified threat to the trees concerned. Examples and notes for each category are:

- 'Known threat to tree' – for example, Tree Officer receives Conservation Area notification to fell
- 'Foreseeable threat to tree' – for example, Planning department receives application for outline planning consent on the site where the tree stands
- 'Perceived threat to tree' – for example, survey identifies tree standing on a potential infill plot

However, the Blue Book is clear that, even where there is no expedient reason to make a TPO, this is still an option. Accordingly, and in order to avoid a disqualifying zero score, 'precautionary only' still scores one point. This latter category might apply, rarely for example, to a garden tree under good management.

The fifth category within this section relates to reverse expediency: where trees are known to be an actionable nuisance, it is possible effectively to protect them with a TPO, hence the zero score.

Clearly, other reasons apply that might prevent/ usually obviate the need for the making of a TPO (eg the tree stands on Crown land). However, it is not felt necessary to incorporate such basic considerations into the method, as it is chiefly intended for field use: these other considerations are most suitably addressed as part of a desk study and could, if necessary, be factored into the scoring after the field work has been completed.

Finally, it should be stressed that the method is not prescriptive except in relation to zero scores: TEMPO merely recommends a course of action. Thus a tree scoring, say, 15, and thus 'definitely meriting' a TPO, might not be included for protection for other reasons unconnected with its attributes.



### Part 3: Decision Guide

This section is based on the accumulated scores derived in Parts 1 & 2, and identifies four outcomes, as follows:

- Any 0** Do not apply TPO  
Where a tree has attracted a zero score, there is a clearly identifiable reason not to protect it, and indeed to seek to do so is simply bad practice
- 1-6** TPO indefensible  
This covers trees that have failed to score enough points in sections a), b) and c) to qualify for an 'other factors' score under d). Such trees have little to offer their locality and should not be protected
- 7-10** Does not merit TPO  
This covers trees which have either qualified for a d) score, though they may not have qualified for Part 2. However, and even if they have made it to Part 2, they have failed to pick up significant additional points. This would apply, for example, to a borderline tree in amenity terms that also lacked the protection imperative of a clear threat to its retention
- 10-13** Possibly merits TPO  
This applies to trees that have qualified under all sections, but have failed to do so convincingly. For these trees, the issue of applying a TPO is likely to devolve to other considerations, such as public pressure, resources and 'gut feeling'
- 14+** Definitely merits TPO  
Trees scoring 14 or more are those that have passed both the amenity and expediency assessments, where the application of a TPO is fully justified

#### Notation boxes

Throughout the method, notation space is provided to record relevant observations under each section. It may even be helpful to include a copy of the TEMPO assessment in with the TPO decision letter to relevant parties, as this will serve to underline the transparency of the decision-making process.



### **3 Conclusion**

TEMPO is a quick and easy means of systematically assessing tree or group suitability for statutory protection. It may be used either for new TPOs or for TPO re-survey, especially where Area TPOs are being reviewed.

From the consultants' perspective, it is also an effective way of testing the suitability of new TPOs, to see whether they have been misapplied. We have also used it to illustrate that trees adjacent to a development site merited TPO protection, securing a TPO for a worried client.

TEMPO does not seek to attach any monetary significance to the derived score: we recommend use of the Helliwell System where this is the objective.

CBA Trees owns the copyright for TEMPO, however the method is freely available, including via internet download.



**TREE EVALUATION METHOD FOR PRESERVATION ORDERS (TEMPO) SURVEY DATA SHEET & DECISION GUIDE**

Date: \_\_\_\_\_ Surveyor: \_\_\_\_\_

**Tree details**  
 TPO Ref: \_\_\_\_\_ Tree/Group No: \_\_\_\_\_ Species: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Owner (if known): \_\_\_\_\_

**Part 1: Amenity assessment**

**a) Condition & suitability for TPO:**

Refer to Guidance Note for definitions

- 5) Good            Highly suitable
- 3) Fair            Suitable
- 1) Poor            Unlikely to be suitable
- 0) Unsafe        Unsuitable
- 0) Dead            Unsuitable

**Score and Notes**

**b) Remaining longevity (in years) & suitability for TPO:**

Refer to 'Species Guide' section in Guidance Note

- 5) 100+            Highly suitable
- 4) 40-100        Very suitable
- 2) 20-40         Suitable
- 1) 10-20         Just suitable
- 0) <10            Unsuitable

**Score and Notes**

**c) Relative public visibility & suitability for TPO:**

Consider realistic potential for future visibility with changed land use; refer to Guidance Note

- 5) Very large trees, or large trees that are prominent landscape features            Highly suitable
- 4) Large trees, or medium trees clearly visible to the public                            Suitable
- 3) Medium trees, or larger trees with limited view only                                Just suitable
- 2) Small trees, or larger trees visible only with difficulty                                Unlikely to be suitable
- 1) Young, v. small, or trees not visible to the public, regardless of size                Probably Unsuitable

**Score and Notes**

Sub-total 2 =  
 Sum of scores a), b), c), d) =



**d) Other factors**

Trees must have accrued 7 or more points (with no 0 score) to qualify

- 5) Principal components of arboricultural features, or veteran trees
- 4) Members of groups of trees that are important for their cohesion
- 3) Trees with significant historical or commemorative importance
- 2) Trees of particularly good form, especially if rare or unusual
- 1) Trees with none of the above additional redeeming features

**Score and Notes**

**Sub-total 2 =**  
**Sum of scores a), b), c), d) =**

**Part 2: Expediency assessment**

Trees must have accrued 9 or more points to qualify; refer to Guidance Note

- 5) Known threat to tree
- 3) Foreseeable threat to tree
- 2) Perceived threat to tree
- 1) Precautionary only
- 0) Tree known to be an actionable nuisance

**Score and Notes**

**Part 3: Decision guide**

Any 0	Do not apply TPO
1-6	TPO indefensible
7-10	Does not merit TPO
11-13	Possibly merits TPO
14+	Definitely merits TPO

**Add Scores for Total:**

**Decision:**

## **3.5 Guidance Note 5: Planning Tree Enforcement Policy**

### **1 Introduction**

The purpose of this document is to set the framework for dealing with tree enforcement issues in a clear, consistent and fair manner and to ensure that activities in this regard are in accordance with current legislation and guidance.

The Town and Country Planning Act 1990 and the Town and Country (Trees) Regulations 1999 provides the statutory basis for most tree preservation and protection. It allows for Local Planning Authorities to make Tree Preservation Orders, protects most trees in Conservation Areas and it places a duty, where appropriate, for Local Planning Authorities to preserve and protect existing and new trees when granting planning permission.

Tree enforcement issues fall into two principal categories:

- unauthorised works on, damage to or removal of trees that are protected by Tree Preservation Orders or situated within Conservation Areas
- breaches of planning conditions relating to tree retention and protection.

### **2 Why have tree enforcement?**

Trees in Huntingdonshire are increasingly under threat as a result of huge pressures to build more intensively on brownfield sites with older buildings, and often expansive and established areas of vegetation, as well as on undeveloped land. This can comprise gardens and open ground formerly used for such activities as sport or allotments. A common feature of all these sites is well established trees.

The demographic and cultural changes that are bringing this about in Huntingdonshire are likely to increase. Without the stewardship of these trees, delivered through careful and balanced protection and enforcement of protection, the character of HDC could change fundamentally. Such a change will have a deleterious impact on the quality of life for residents of Huntingdonshire and will be in direct contradiction to the District's commitment to sustainable development and a sustainable future.



### 3 Relevance of tree enforcement to the District's planning enforcement activity

Though high procedural standards remain paramount, tree enforcement cases are handled significantly differently to those associated with a normal planning breach.

In certain circumstances, enforcement notices may be too slow a tool. For example, where ground compaction around trees on a development site is being aggravated dramatically each time a vehicle passes over its root system, a stop notice is likely to be considered more appropriate than a breach of condition notice. Such notices would prevent permanent and irretrievable damage that can be caused so quickly and which cannot be repaired or improved. The provisions of section 183 of the Town and Country Planning Act 1990 enable the local planning authority to serve a stop notice, in certain circumstances, when they serve a copy of an enforcement notice. The stop notice prohibits the carrying out of that activity on the enforcement notice land.

### 4 The Range of Tree-Related Offences

Breaches of tree protection include:

- Unauthorised removal of tree(s): This always has a detrimental effect on visual amenity and the character of an area. Depending upon the size, species and prominence of the tree(s) the effect will vary from case to case.
- Unauthorised work to tree(s): The effect of work to tree (s) can vary from the expert removal of one minor limb to complete mutilation. This can mean little or no effect on amenity or in severe cases a seriously detrimental effect.
- Breach of tree protection conditions: This generally prejudices the health/safety/life expectancy/appearance of the tree(s) and, therefore, amenity in both the short and long term.

## 5 Factors Determining an Appropriate Course of Action

Action that can be taken by the Council in respect to the different types of contravention varies and needs to take into account:

- the size of the tree(s)
- the prominence of the tree(s)
- the condition of the tree(s)
- the life expectancy of the tree(s)
- the seriousness of the offence
- the loss of/effect on amenity

Where a tree which is the subject of a Tree Preservation Order is removed without consent or a tree in a Conservation Area is removed without the statutory six weeks notice having been served on the Council:

- If the preserved tree is a single specimen 'amenity' tree in good condition, and could not be adequately replaced by planting another tree, the Council will, in all but exceptional circumstances, be likely to prosecute those responsible for its removal. The Council will also seek to ensure the immediate provision (subject to planting seasons) of another tree.
- In all other cases e.g. lesser trees/trees in groups etc., the Council is likely to prosecute and in all but exceptional cases, require the provision of a semi-mature replacement tree.
- With respect to Conservation Area trees, the seriousness of such an offence will be judged by determining if the tree would have been made the subject of a draft Tree Preservation Order had the requisite notice been served. Where the tree would have been made the subject of an Order, the Council is likely to take the same action as indicated above.

Where unauthorised works are carried out on a tree (s) which is the subject of a Tree Preservation Order or in a Conservation Area:

- The seriousness of such an offence is determined by the extent and quality of works and the effect on visual amenity and life expectancy.
- Where relatively minor works to an acceptable standard (British Standard 3998 – Tree Works) are involved, the owner/tree surgeon will be formally notified that any future proposed works must be the subject of a formal application to the Council.
- If it is considered that consent would have been granted to a preserved tree (s) or no objection raised to a tree (s) in a Conservation Area where extensive works have been undertaken, notification as at the above paragraph will take place so long as the works have been carried out to an acceptable standard
- Where more extensive works are undertaken without consent or prior notification in the case of Conservation Areas that would not have been agreed had an application been submitted, the Council will seek to prosecute those responsible. This generally applies where the appearance of the tree is altered to a point where there is a clear effect on visual amenity. Where these works have been undertaken to a poor standard remedial works will be required.



- In cases where works are undertaken that would ordinarily have been acceptable, in terms of general form and extent, but to a poor standard, the Council will ensure that all necessary remedial works are undertaken as soon as possible. Where such remedial works are not undertaken in an acceptable timescale and in accordance with a specification issued by the Council, the Council will be likely to prosecute those responsible for the works.

Tree work or tree removal carried out on trees retained by condition on a planning permission without the necessary consent from the Council:

- Where tree removal or tree work has seriously harmed the appearance of the development the Council will seek to remedy the situation - if necessary through an enforcement notice or Breach of Condition Notice.
- Where there is a serious threat of further unauthorised work to trees of value to the development, a Stop Notice or Injunction may be used. The Council may prosecute those responsible for the works.

Failure to implement tree protection on trees protected by condition on a planning permission as agreed by the Council:

- A range of threats to trees are regularly encountered as a result of these breaches of conditions. Inadequate protective fencing, the unauthorised movement of fencing from the agreed positions, ground works taking place within the exclusion zones, installation of hard surfaces, foundations, services etc. contrary to conditions, changes to ground levels represent the major source of contraventions.

- Mechanical damage to trees above ground is usually obvious. An appropriate course of action will be determined by the extent of the damage. The most difficult problem to resolve occurs as a result of damage to trees below ground whether it is soil compaction resulting in asphyxiation of roots to root severance. Both threaten the health and safety of the trees and usually result in a shortening of life expectancy. The consequences are often not seen in trees for several years.
- Where normal Officer approaches do not succeed in achieving an immediate cessation of the works causing the damage the most expedient method of enforcement involves the service of an enforcement notice for breach of condition accompanied by a stop notice. Normal enforcement procedures are not speedy enough to prevent permanent damage to trees and this represents the only method of enforcement that can realistically bring about an immediate cessation of the breach of condition. The Council may prosecute those responsible.

With regard to any enforcement action, especially where criminal proceedings may be involved, each case will be considered on its individual merits. Any decision to prosecute will have regard to the two-stage test set out in the Code for Crown Prosecutors. This provides that proceedings should only be instituted where evidence is such as to render a conviction more likely than not and, that proceedings should only be commenced where it is in the public interest to do so.



## 6 Enforcement – trees protected under a TPO or within a Conservation Area

As described above, trees are protected when they are the subject of Tree Preservation Orders or within Conservation Areas (subject to certain exemptions). In general, it is an offence to cut down, uproot, lop, top, wilfully damage or wilfully destroy a protected tree without authorisation. Retention and protection of trees on development sites is also secured through the use of planning conditions.

In the case of trees protected by a Tree Preservation Order, consent is required for any works on the trees following submission of a formal application. Any consent may be subject to conditions, and there is a right of appeal to the Secretary of State against a refusal of consent or the terms of a condition.

Where trees are in a Conservation Area, six weeks' notice must be served on the Local Planning Authority of any proposal to carry out works on the trees. During this six week period, the Authority may raise no objection to the works or make a Tree Preservation Order to prevent them being carried out. If the Authority takes no action within six weeks, the works may go ahead as notified.

There are two offences, which apply equally to trees protected by Tree Preservation Orders and those within Conservation Areas:

**1** Anyone who cuts down, uproots or wilfully destroys a tree, or who lops, tops or wilfully damages it in a way that is likely to destroy it, is liable, if convicted in the Magistrates Court, to a fine of up to £20,000. If the person is committed for trial in the Crown Court, they are liable on conviction to an unlimited fine. The Courts have held that it is not necessary for a tree to be obliterated for it to be “destroyed” for the purposes of the legislation. It is sufficient for the tree to have been rendered useless as an amenity.

**2** Anyone who carries out works on a tree that are not likely to destroy it is liable, if convicted in the Magistrates Court, to a fine of up to £2,500. Any proceedings for offences in this category must be brought within six months of the date the offence was committed.

In addition to directly carrying out unauthorised works on protected trees, it is an offence to cause or permit such works.

In order to bring a successful prosecution, the Authority must be able to prove that:

- the defendant has carried out, or caused, or permitted works on the tree
- the tree was protected
- the works were carried out without the Authority's consent and
- the works were not exempt works.



If it is claimed that works are exempt from the usual requirements of the legislation, it is for the defendant to prove, on the balance of probabilities, that the exemption applies.

Whenever a tree has been removed in contravention of the legislation, or because it is dead, dying or dangerous, there is an automatic duty on the landowner to plant a replacement tree of a suitable size and species at the same place as soon as reasonably possible (unless that requirement is waived by the Local Planning Authority). The replacement tree is then subject to the same protection as the tree that was lost. If the landowner fails to comply with this requirement, the Authority may serve a Tree Replacement Notice within a period of four years to ensure compliance. There are rights of appeal against Tree Replacement Notices.

## **Procedures for investigating complaints**

Incidents involving contraventions of the tree protection legislation may come to light as a result of complaints received by the Council. The Council may also become aware of contraventions when carrying out routine monitoring of works on development sites.

When alleged cases of unauthorised works on a tree come to the attention of the Council, an initial investigation will be carried out as soon as possible (normally within 48 hours). The initial investigation will consist of a check to establish whether the tree is protected, whether any consent has been granted, and a site visit. In cases where it appears that protected trees are being removed and in other instances where there may be a significant impact on public amenity, a site visit will be undertaken as a matter of urgency. The legislation confers a right to enter land to carry out such investigations.

Where it appears that unauthorised tree works have been undertaken, notes and photographs will be taken during the site visit which may be used as evidence later.

The suspect will be identified and contacted as soon as possible in the process (this may be at the time of the initial site visit). He or she will be asked to give his or her observations on the incident and any relevant background information. If it appears that an offence has been committed and that answers to preliminary questions on site may be required as evidence, he or she may be cautioned. Any such cautions will be issued in accordance with the code of practice issued under the Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984 and the suspect will be advised that he or she is not under arrest, is free to leave at any time and is entitled to legal representation.

Where appropriate, the suspect will be invited to the Council offices to undertake a tape-recorded interview under caution and under the provisions of the Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984. (See Appendix 1 for a pro-forma letter inviting a suspect for interview).

A judgement will be made at the time of the initial site visit as to whether cautioning and formal questioning is appropriate at that stage. In most cases, the Council will not seek to formally interview under caution on site but will write to the suspect, seeking detailed information regarding the incident. If a satisfactory written reply is received, formal cautioning and interviewing may not be deemed necessary. In the absence of a satisfactory written response, the Council will be obliged to reconsider this matter. The identity of any complainant will be kept confidential and not disclosed to the alleged offender as far as practicable. However, it will be made clear to the complainant that if the case comes to court it is most likely that they will be required as a witness and in that case they would not normally be entitled to confidentiality. Complainants will be kept informed of the course of the investigation and its outcome. Complainants and any other witnesses will be contacted as appropriate and requested to provide written statements to be used as evidence in court. Witnesses will be informed that they may be required to appear in court to give evidence and be cross-examined as necessary. Suspects will be given adequate and fair opportunity to give their side of events during the course of investigations.



## Options for action

The Council has a range of possible courses of action available to deal with cases of unauthorised works on protected trees. These include the following :

- seek a prosecution
- administer a formal caution. This is a formal process whereby the perpetrator signs a statement admitting the offence and submitting to the caution (See Appendices 2, 3, and 4 for pro-forma letter and cautions). It may be referred to at the sentencing stage if the same person is ever found guilty of a subsequent offence. It may also be taken into consideration when deciding whether or not to prosecute at a later stage for another similar offence
- under section 206 of the Town and Country Planning Act 1990, require the planting of a replacement tree for each tree destroyed
- under section 207 of the same Act, serve a replanting direction. This is a formal procedure to secure replacement planting, which can be invoked if the landowner does not otherwise comply with a duty to carry out replacement planting and
- take no formal action. This may be accompanied by informal action, such as advising the alleged offender to ensure that the incident is not repeated.

## **Selection of appropriate action**

Decisions as to what action to take in cases of unauthorised works on trees will be taken in the public interest, with each case being dealt with on its own merits. A prosecution will not normally be brought unless the unauthorised works have resulted in a loss of public amenity.

In most cases, a prosecution will not be brought if consent would have been granted (or no objection raised) for the works undertaken had they been applied for.

In considering whether to bring a prosecution, regard will be given to the likelihood of the offence being repeated and the degree to which a prosecution would act as an effective deterrent. Regard will also be had to any financial advantage perceived to have been gained by carrying out the unauthorised works and whether the perpetrator has been prosecuted, cautioned or warned for similar offences in the past.

Whilst ignorance of the law is not an excuse, the attitude and circumstances of the perpetrator will be taken into account, including any expression of regret, helpfulness and co-operation with the investigation and any indication that the perpetrator was acting in good faith. Individual personal circumstances and any other mitigating factors will be taken into consideration where appropriate.

Two tests will be applied in cases where a prosecution appears likely, consideration of which will be undertaken in consultation with the Council's Legal Section:

**1. The Evidential Test:** A prosecution will not be commenced unless there is sufficient, admissible and reliable evidence that the offence has been committed and that there is a reasonable prospect of conviction

**2. The Public Interest Test:** A prosecution will only be brought where this is in the public interest. Administering of formal cautions may be applied in cases where a prosecution can properly be brought but where such action is not considered appropriate in the circumstances of the case. Persons who have previously received a formal caution will normally be dealt with by prosecution.

The planting of replacement trees will normally be required irrespective of whether the perpetrator has been prosecuted or cautioned.



## Procedures for taking action

Tree enforcement issues will be dealt with by the Council's Planning Enforcement Officers, in consultation with the Arboricultural Officer, and with the Council's Legal Section.

In cases where it appears that unauthorised works have been carried out on protected trees, decision on how to proceed will usually be made by the District Council's Head of Planning Services.

Formal cautions will normally be issued at the Council offices. The offender will be contacted in writing and requested to submit to the caution. Details of the offence will be provided in the letter, along with an explanation of the significance of the caution. Records will be kept of formal cautions issued and will be referred to in court if the offender commits a further offence. When a decision has been made to issue a formal caution, but the offender refuses to submit to the caution, the case will be reconsidered, including a consideration of whether to bring a prosecution.

Where suspects are invited to the Council offices for a tape recorded interview under caution, the Code of Practice under the Police and Criminal Evidence Act 1984 will be adhered to.

When replacement planting is required, monitoring will be carried out to ensure compliance.

## **7 Enforcement – use of planning conditions relating to trees**

In granting planning consent for sites where trees are to be retained, the Council will typically use conditions relating to tree retention and protection. The Council will expect all conditions relating to trees to be complied with in full and will use its enforcement powers to seek compliance where necessary.

Tree related conditions generally require that the conditions be formally cleared in writing prior to any works commencing on site (including demolition). Trees can be damaged very easily in a short space of time. It is therefore particularly important with tree related conditions that they be cleared prior to works commencing and that they are fully adhered to.

## **Dealing with breaches of planning control**

Breaches of planning control occur where conditions have not been formally cleared prior to works commencing or where the conditions are not complied with once works have commenced.

The principal instrument for dealing with breaches of tree related conditions is the Temporary Stop Notice. Officers of the Council have delegated powers to serve such notices under Section 171E of the Town & Country Planning Act 1990. The purpose is essentially to stop further works on site until such time as conditions have been satisfactorily complied with and tree protection details have been agreed. If tree related conditions are not being complied with, there is usually an imminent threat of damage to trees. If it not possible to resolve the outstanding issues there and then on site, the serving of a Temporary Stop Notice will be considered. Temporary Stop Notices come into effect immediately for a period of up to 28 days.

Contravention of a Temporary Stop Notice is an offence. A person guilty of this offence is liable, if convicted in a Magistrates Court, to a fine of up to £20,000. In a Crown Court, the potential fine is unlimited. If breaches of planning control lead to damage to, removal of or unauthorised works on protected trees, action may also be taken as detailed in Section 2 of this document.



## Decisions upon action

The nature of breaches of tree related conditions is such that a decision often needs to be made quickly on site. Each case will be dealt with on its own merits and Council officers will make a proper assessment of the situation prior to making a decision on how to proceed.

The serving of a Temporary Stop Notice will be likely if the following apply: - a clear and demonstrable breach of planning control relating to trees has occurred - trees are being damaged or are likely to be damaged if works continue and - the matter cannot be resolved immediately on site.



## Appendix 1

### Pro-forma letter inviting suspect to interview under caution

Dear \_\_\_\_\_

TOWN & COUNTRY PLANNING ACT 1990; SECTION 210 BREACH OF TREE PROTECTION LEGISLATION

As you will be aware, the Council is investigating a breach of the tree protection legislation which occurred at \_\_\_\_\_ on \_\_\_\_\_.

In connection with this investigation, the Council would like to invite you to a formal interview under caution at the Council offices. The caution states: 'You do not have to say anything. But it may harm your defence if you do not mention when questioned something which you later rely on in court. Anything you do say may be taken in evidence'. The reason for the interview under caution is that the Council suspects that an offence has been committed, and before any questions are put to you about your involvement or suspected involvement in that offence, the caution should be given so that your answers or silence may be given in Court in evidence.

If you attend the interview then I would advise that you are not under arrest and would be able to leave at any time. Legal representation is allowed during the interview. Alternatively, if at any time you wish to contact your solicitor to seek legal advice during the interview then you are free to do so. Additionally, a copy of the codes of practice would be available for you to consult.

I would be grateful if you could contact me by telephone on the above number and advise whether or not you are willing to attend the formal interview and if so whether or not you will be legally represented. If you do not attend but choose to reply by letter, I would advise that your reply would be considered admissible as evidence since you have been advised of the caution. I would further advise that it is Council Policy to always seek to recover its enforcement costs.

I look forward to hearing from you in the near future.

Yours sincerely,



## Appendix 2

### Pro-forma letter regarding formal caution

Dear \_\_\_\_\_

TOWN & COUNTRY PLANNING ACT 1990; SECTION 210 BREACH OF TREE PROTECTION  
LEGISLATION

I am writing with regard to the breach of the tree protection legislation which occurred at \_\_\_\_\_ on  
\_\_\_\_\_.

Under the circumstances, the Council is prepared to deal with the matter by issuing a formal caution. As discussed, this will require you to admit to the offence in question. The caution will remain on your file and should you be found guilty of a similar offence in court, the formal caution will be brought to the attention of the court and will be taken into account when the penalty imposed on you is decided upon. It may also be taken into account in the future when the Council decides whether or not to prosecute if you commit a similar offence. I am enclosing a Preliminary Formal Caution form, which must be completed and returned to me, indicating that you admit to committing the offence and are willing to accept the formal caution. You will then be required to attend the Council offices to receive the formal caution.

I have provisionally booked \_\_\_\_\_. If this date/time is not convenient, please contact me as soon as possible to arrange an alternative appointment. I must advise you that if you do not agree to being formally cautioned, the Council will be obliged to re-consider the matter. This could result in the institution of a prosecution. You are welcome to be legally represented on this occasion or a friend may accompany you if you wish.

If you have any queries at this stage, please do not hesitate to contact me.

Yours sincerely,

## **Appendix 3**

### **Pro-forma formal caution (preliminary) (to be sent with above letter)**

#### **FORMAL CAUTION (PRELIMINARY)**

I, \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ hereby admit I have committed the following offence: Breach of the Tree Protection Legislation: Section 210 of the Town & Country Planning Act 1990 Details: The formal caution procedure has been explained to me and I am willing to accept a formal caution and for a record of that caution to be kept on file by Huntingdonshire District Council. I understand that if I commit a further offence this caution may influence the Council's decision on whether or not to prosecute me. I also understand that this caution may be cited in any future criminal proceedings should I be found guilty of a similar offence.

I undertake to co-operate fully with Huntingdonshire District Council in administering a formal caution to me.

Signed \_\_\_\_\_

Name (Block Capitals) \_\_\_\_\_

Date \_\_\_\_\_



## Appendix 4

### Pro-forma caution

#### FORMAL CAUTION

Mr/Ms \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ have agreed to be formally cautioned and accordingly I FORMALLY CAUTION you that I am satisfied that you have committed the following offence which you have admitted, namely: Breach of the Tree Protection Legislation: Section 210 of the Town & Country Planning Act 1990 Details: A record of this caution will be held by the Council and may be used in future proceedings against you if you commit further offences. This caution was administered by me, \_\_\_\_\_ of Huntingdonshire District Council this \_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ 200\_.

Signed \_\_\_\_\_

This caution was received by me, Mr/Ms \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ this \_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ 200\_.

Signed \_\_\_\_\_

The giving of this caution was witnessed by me \_\_\_\_\_ of Huntingdonshire District Council this \_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_ 20\_.

Signed \_\_\_\_\_

## Appendix 5

### Pro-forma Temporary Stop Notice

IMPORTANT - THIS COMMUNICATION AFFECTS YOUR PROPERTY TOWN AND COUNTRY PLANNING ACT 1990 (As amended by the Planning and Compensation Act 1991 and the Planning and Compulsory Purchase Act 2004) TEMPORARY STOP NOTICE SERVED BY: HUNTINGDONSHIRE DISTRICT COUNCIL herein after referred to as "the Council".

To: [name of intended recipient of the notice]

1. On [date], the Council has issued this temporary stop notice alleging that there has been a breach of planning control on the land described in paragraph 4 below.
2. This temporary stop notice is issued by the Council, in exercise of their power in section 171E of the 1990 Act, because they think that it is expedient that the activity specified in this notice should cease on the land described in paragraph 4 below. The Council now prohibits the carrying out of the activity specified in this notice. Important additional information is given in the Annex to this notice.
3. THE REASONS FOR ISSUING THIS NOTICE [Briefly specify the reasons why the temporary stop notice has been issued. There is no requirement to outline specific policies from the Local Plan.]
4. THE LAND TO WHICH THIS NOTICE RELATES Land at [address of land, or description of relevant part of the land to which the temporary stop notice relates], shown edged red on the attached plan.
5. THE ACTIVITY TO WHICH THIS NOTICE RELATES [Specify the activity required by the temporary stop notice to cease, and any activity carried out as part of that activity, or associated with it.]
6. WHAT YOU ARE REQUIRED TO DO Cease all the activity specified in this notice.
7. WHEN THIS NOTICE TAKES EFFECT

This notice takes effect on [date] when all the activity specified in this notice shall cease. This notice will cease to have effect on [date 28 days after it takes effect].

Dated: [date of notice]

Signed: [Council's authorised officer]

On behalf of: HUNTINGDONSHIRE DISTRICT COUNCIL PATHFINDER HOUSE ST MARY'S STREET  
HUNTINGDON CAMBRIDGESHIRE PE29 3TN

Nominated Officer: Telephone Number:



## ANNEX

### **WARNING - THIS NOTICE TAKES EFFECT ON THE DATE SPECIFIED IN PARAGRAPH 7. THERE IS NO RIGHT OF APPEAL TO THE FIRST SECRETARY OF STATE AGAINST THIS NOTICE.**

It is an offence to contravene a temporary stop notice after a site notice has been displayed or the temporary stop notice has been served on you. (Section 171G of the 1990 Act). If you then fail to comply with the temporary stop notice you will be at risk of immediate prosecution in the Magistrates' Court, for which the maximum penalty is £20,000 on summary conviction for a first offence and for any subsequent offence. The fine on conviction on indictment is unlimited. If you are in any doubt about what this notice requires you to do, you should get in touch immediately with [Council's nominated officer to deal with enquiries, address and telephone number].

If you need independent advice about this notice, you are advised to contact urgently a lawyer, planning consultant or other professional adviser specialising in planning matters. If you wish to contest the validity of the notice, you may only do so by an application to the High Court for judicial review.

## 3.6 Guidance Note 6: Tree Risk Management

### 1 Introduction

#### 1.1 Purpose of this guide

This guide outlines how Huntingdonshire District Council manages the potential risks associated with trees.

The guide concentrates on the risk associated with someone being killed or seriously injured by whole or partial failure of a tree. Other risks associated with trees, such as damage to property and minor nuisance, are dealt with in detail in Guidance note 2, Guidance for Tree Management.

#### 1.2 Trees and risk

The risk of being killed by a falling tree is extremely low:

*“Each year between 5 and 6 people in the UK are killed when trees fall on them. Thus the risk of being struck and killed by a tree falling is extremely low – the risk of being struck and killed by a tree growing in a public space is even lower. Up to 3 people are killed each year by trees in public spaces\*, but as almost the entire population of the UK is exposed, the risk is about one in 20 million.” (HSE, 2007)*

The average risk is with the ‘broadly acceptable’ region of the risk triangle published by HSE’s “Reducing Risks Protecting People”. However this is only a general guide and not necessarily a statement of what is reasonably practicable in law.

Although the actual risk is low it is not generally perceived in this way by the public, due to the attention that any such incident inevitably attracts. It is important that an appropriate balance is reached which minimises risk whilst ensuring that large trees are not lost from the landscape.



## 2 Current status

### 2.1 General approach

Whenever a tree is inspected by the Council's Arboricultural Team Leader or Arboricultural Officer, consideration is always given to the potential hazard that the tree poses and appropriate action taken when a significant risk is identified. Tree inspections are generated in a variety of ways; the majority of inspections are reactive and in response to a request or enquiry usually from the public.

### 2.2 Scheduled surveys – Huntingdonshire District Council land

Pro-active inspections of trees are undertaken in wooded areas of land managed by the Council's Countryside Services.

Detailed inspection of trees in major parks will commence to identify both any work required and trees to be monitored due to their condition or location. Although a comprehensive re-inspection of individual trees will depend on the level of risk associated with them, an annual walk over survey of the major parks will be undertaken to identify any hazards and undertake tree works necessary for safety. The intention is to extend this survey to include all areas of land owned by the Council and prioritise a proactive re-inspection regime according to the level of risk.



## **2.3 Private trees**

When trees in private ownership which pose a risk to public land are brought to the attention of the Council, the owner of the trees will be advised of the hazard and asked to take action. In cases where the owner of the tree fails to take action the Council, where appropriate, uses its powers under The Local Government (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1976, to ensure that the tree is made safe. If the tree is a threat to a public highway the matter is reported to Cambridgeshire County Council who use their powers under the Highways Act, 1980.

## **2.4 Recording tree related risk**

When a tree that poses a significant risk is identified, the appropriate work to make the tree safe, or the felling/removal of the tree will be undertaken, as necessary. However, in some cases, an identified risk may not be sufficiently severe to warrant immediate action, and the tree may instead require ongoing monitoring; such as a reassessment in the summer to assess the physiological condition of the tree. In such cases, where the tree is outside an area within a proactive inspection regime, the monitoring will be recorded separately on a register of ongoing tree risk assessments.



### 3 Method of risk assessment

There are various tools which exist to assess the risk associated with trees, including:

#### 3.1 Quantified Tree Risk Assessment (QTRA)

When a detailed risk assessment of a tree or group of trees is required, the Quantified Tree Risk Assessment (QTRA) system will be used. This is a system which applies established and accepted risk management principles to tree safety management. QTRA is a commonly used system in the arboricultural industry and the most commonly used tree risk assessment system for local authorities. QTRA compares the risks associated with the retention of trees with a broadly acceptable level of risk.

The assessment of tree risk is made up of the following three components:

##### 1) Target

The target is anything of value that could be harmed in the event of tree failure. This is assessed on the frequency of occupation within the area. Therefore an area which is highly frequented such as a busy road will have a higher value than an area with a low frequency occupation such as a tree in a wood not adjacent to a public path.

##### 2) Impact potential

The potential for the tree (or part of a tree) that is being assessed to do harm. For example a small branch is unlikely to cause significant damage, where as if a large limb were to fail it could cause serious injury or significant damage to a structure.

##### 3) Probability of failure

This is an assessment of the likelihood of a part of the tree or the whole tree failing.

Using the QTRA system an assessment of the level of risk posed can be given expressed as a probability of harm in any one year eg 1:100,000.

### 3.2 Acceptable level of Risk

Once the level of risk has been established it is necessary to decide whether this level of risk is acceptable. The legal framework does not require the elimination of risk altogether, but that the risk is minimised to an acceptable level. Several publications have suggested that this level is 1/10,000 per year, notably the Health and Safety Executive (1996):

*“For members of the public who have a risk imposed on them ‘in the wider interest’ HSE would set this limit at 1/10,000 per annum”*

On the basis of this, the acceptable level of risk has been set at 1:10,000. It may be possible to reduce the risk associated with a tree by pruning or moving the target e.g re-routing a footpath.

There may be exceptional occasions when a higher risk may be acceptable, such as the presence of a tree of particular additional value, or for reasons of heritage associations. In these circumstances the general advice of the HSE will be followed:

*Occasionally a duty holder will decide, usually for heritage reasons, to maintain a particular tree, despite the fact that it is very old or has serious structural faults that cannot be remedied. A specific assessment for that tree and specific management measures, including regular and detailed inspections are likely to be appropriate. (HSE 2007)*

In addition to this further arboricultural advice or investigations in to the condition of the tree may be sought from an independent consultant, to verify the opinion of the Arboricultural Officer or the Arboricultural Team Leader.

### 3.3 Types of risk assessment inspection

At present four levels of inspection are used to identify the level of risk associated with trees dependent on the circumstances. Not all trees require individual assessment by the Arboricultural Team Leader or Arboricultural Officer. There are options for the types of inspection required and the degree of competency of the person undertaking the inspection. The HSE (2007) considers that someone to be competent requires a working knowledge of trees and their defects, but need not be an arboricultural specialist.

#### Non-specialist survey

Members of the Operations team, Countryside Services team, and Planning (Tree and Landscape) team all undertake surveys of land under Council control and as a result should bring trees in need of more detailed inspection to the attention of the Arboricultural Team Leader or Arboricultural Officer. It is acknowledged that the role of these officers could be enhanced with additional training, to raise awareness of potentially hazardous trees.

#### Drive-by survey

Principally used for roadside trees to identify roads which have trees associated with them and a general level of risk, from which the most obvious hazard trees will easily be identified. Where roads with mature trees are identified, a walk over survey to identify the trees will be required, and, in the case of some trees, detailed inspection.



### **Walk over survey**

During such a survey, only those trees with defects are noted and recorded. Particular attention is given to trees in high risk areas, e.g by high occupancy areas, roads and buildings. If a defect in a tree is noted a detailed assessment will be made.

### **Detailed inspection**

Comprising a comprehensive inspection and QTRA of the tree in question, with all relevant details recorded and specific management recommendations made. This type of inspection will only be undertaken by the Arboricultural Team Leader or Arboricultural Officer or other suitability qualified person.

## 4 Summary

- The system is currently under review.
- The risk associated with trees is generally relatively low
- The identification of risk associated with trees is always considered when a tree is inspected.
- A strategy of pro-actively surveying trees in high use areas has commenced and is being expanded to cover more areas.
- The Quantified Risk assessment (QTRA) method of establishing the degree of risk is used.

## 5 More information

Quantified Tree Risk Assessment

<http://www.qtra.co.uk/>



### 3.7 Guidance Note 7: Tree management advice for public and private bodies.

#### 1 Introduction

Trees by their nature are dynamic living systems. They have evolved to cope with losing limbs, breaking apart and being wounded and they grow adaptively in response to the environment around them. Trees and woodlands can make a significant contribution to quality of life, the local economy and the environment. However, where trees and people co-exist, there is a need to ensure that a tree's natural processes do not pose a risk to the people and property around them.

Owners of trees have a legal duty of care and are obliged to take all reasonable care to ensure that any foreseeable hazards can be identified and made safe. Although it is not possible to completely eliminate the risk of a tree failing, there are often indications that a tree may be in decline, have structural faults or be suffering from decay or pests and diseases.



*Horse chestnut - leaf miner*

Many of these signs can be recognized by trained inspectors who can then instigate further investigations by a qualified arboriculturalist.

The safe and appropriate management of its trees is important to Huntingdonshire District Council. We want to advise all public landowners on the type of tree management to ensure that a balance is maintained between public safety and sustaining a healthy tree population with the benefits it provides.

Some examples of the many aesthetic, social, economic and health benefits of trees are listed below:

- Trees play a vital role in urban and rural ecosystems by helping to support a great variety of Wildlife;
- A large beech tree can provide enough oxygen for the daily requirements of ten people;- Property in tree lined streets is worth 18% more than in similar streets without trees;
- Trees intercept water, store some of it and reduce storm runoff and the possibility of Flooding;
- Trees help to lock up the carbon emissions that contribute to global warming. For example, 1 hectare of woodland grown to maturity and looked after forever would absorb the carbon emissions of 100 average family cars driven for one year (Climate Care/Trees for Cities estimate);

- Trees have a positive impact on the incidence of asthma, skin cancer and stress-related illness by filtering out polluted air, reducing smog formation, shading out solar radiation and by providing an attractive, calming setting for recreation; Trees can save up to 10% of energy consumption through their moderation of the local climate;

The importance of trees has been emphasised by a number of recent Government reports including a national survey of England's urban trees and their management entitled *Trees in Towns II*, published in February 2008. More recently, in December 2011, the National Tree Safety Group released its guidance on how tree owners should approach tree safety management – see page 4. This guidance note is based on the National Tree Safety Group guidance.



## 2 The Guidance

This guidance document provides advice for the tree owner that is succinct, comprehensive but most of all practical in its application.

The fundamental concept underlying the management of risks from trees is that the evaluation of what is reasonable should be based upon a balance between benefit and risk.

This evaluation can be undertaken only in a local context, since trees provide many different types of benefit in a range of different circumstances.

This concept of tree and risk management is underpinned by a set of five key principles:

1. trees are important, and provide a wide variety of benefits to society
  2. trees are living organisms that naturally lose branches or fall
  3. the overall risk to human safety is extremely low
  4. tree owners have a legal duty of care
  5. tree owners should take a balanced and proportionate approach to tree safety
- Management

Managing the risk from trees is the responsibility of the owners and managers of the land on which they grow.

Trees form part of the overall landscape and their presence has many different benefits depending on how the land is used. Not all trees are managed and, even for those that are, such management forms a component of overall land management.

Human safety is one part of that management; Risk management can be undertaken only by understanding the trees and their value to people in the context within which they grow. The requirement under health and safety legislation is to have a suitable and sufficient risk assessment, and to apply measures that are reasonable and practicable. This guidance shows an integrated approach to that process within the wider context of land ownership and management.



### **3 Understanding the risks from trees**

#### **The Overall risk to Human Safety is Extremely Low**

Research by the centre for Decision analysis and risk management (Darm), commissioned by the NTSG, has addressed the risk to people from trees. It demonstrates that the overall risk to the public from falling trees is extremely low, representing about a one in 10 million chance of an individual being killed by a falling tree (or part of a tree) in any given year.

So far as non-fatal injuries in the UK are concerned, the number of accident and emergency cases (A&E) attributable to being struck by trees (about 55 a year) is exceedingly small compared with the roughly 2.9 million leisure-related A&E cases per year. Footballs (262,000), children's swings (10,900) and even wheelie bins (2,200) are involved in many more incidents.

The research also shows that there is limited societal concern about risks of this type (although there may be adverse publicity in the immediate aftermath of an individual incident). The analysis indicates that it would be unlikely that adjustments to the current overall management regime would reduce the risk to health and safety in any significant way.

#### **Real Risks and Public Concerns**

Trees grow in many different situations, and within areas of widely varying levels of public access or other human activity. Where it is appropriate to manage trees, this management should seek to enhance their significance (in terms of value, access and other benefits) and all the other ecosystem service, biodiversity and social benefits they provide, and to manage the undesirable impacts they can have (such as damage to property and risks to human safety). Considerable concern and uncertainty about managing trees for safety has arisen in the last few years. This has largely been stimulated by a number of court cases and other responses to rare incidents where a falling tree or branch has killed or injured a person. Addressing these concerns requires information about the "real" risk involved and the level of public concern.



## Hazards

Very simply, a hazard is something that can cause harm and here, the hazard is a tree. Risk is characterised by reference to potential events and consequences, or a combination of the two. It is often expressed as a combination of an event's consequences and the likelihood of it occurring. In this case, a potential consequence is death or serious injury. Levels of risk are judged against a baseline, which is usually the current overall maintenance or control regime for that hazard (the tree). When assessing trees, owners and managers need to judge whether the management measures they adopt will fulfil society's reasonable expectations. "Reasonableness" is a key legal concept when considering the risks of trees to the public and tree owners' obligations.

Deciding what is reasonable can be undertaken only with regard to the trees' place within the wider management context and how that context influences decisions locally. The Health and Safety Executive (HSE) has identified that an individual risk of death of one in one million per year for both workers and the public corresponds to a very low level of risk. It points out that this level of risk is extremely small when compared with the general background level of risk which people face and engage with voluntarily in the course of everyday life.

## Significance of the Identified Risks

The individual risk of death attributable to trees is 10 times less than the threshold of one death in one million per year that the HSE says people regard as insignificant or trivial in their daily lives. Because trees present a very low risk to people, owners and managers should be able to make planning and management decisions by considering how trees fit into a particular local context and avoid unnecessary intervention, survey and cost. This approach will help them ensure that any management is proportionate and strikes an appropriate balance between the real risks and benefits.

## 4 Managing the Risk from Trees

Tree management or the lack of it should not expose people to significant likelihood of death, permanent disability or serious injury. Accidents are on occasions unavoidable. Such risk is acceptable only in the following conditions:

- the likelihood is extremely low
- the hazards are clear to users
- there are obvious benefits
- further reducing the risks would remove the benefits
- there are no reasonably practicable ways to manage the risks

In its position statement, the NTSG argues that it is reasonable that sufficiently large organisations that own or manage trees develop a management strategy (in line with practice in other sectors). This strategy may strike a balance between risks present and benefits accrued. An organisation that publishes and maintains a tree strategy or management plan, part of which includes information on their risk management plan for the trees they own, is much better placed to demonstrate they have fulfilled their duty of care.

## 5 What the law says

### *The Role of this Guidance*

This document may be presented to a court for consideration as supporting documentation in any case involving death or personal injury caused by a falling tree or branch. Reported judgments already demonstrate that courts will consider publications of this nature when addressing the duty of care.

It must, however, be appreciated that the guidance in this document will not in itself determine a court's judgment in an individual case. First, all cases are sensitive to their own facts. Second, a court will always reserve to itself the decision as to whether a tree owner has acted as "a reasonable and prudent landowner". This guidance can, however, inform the court in the making of that decision.

### *The Legal Framework*

Under both the civil law and criminal law, an owner of land on which a tree stands has responsibilities for the health and safety of those on or near the land and has potential liabilities arising from the falling of a tree or branch. The civil law gives rise to duties and potential liabilities to pay damages in the event of a breach of those duties. The criminal law gives rise to the risk of prosecution in the event of an infringement of the criminal law.

### *The Civil Law*

The owner of the land on which a tree stands, together with any party who has control over the tree's management, owes a duty of care under common law to all people who might be injured by the tree. The duty of care is to take reasonable care to avoid acts or omissions that cause a reasonably foreseeable risk of injury to persons or property.



### ***The Duty Holder***

This is the person who has control of the tree's management whether as owner, lessee, licensee or occupier of the land on which the tree stands. The relevant highway authority is responsible for trees on land forming part of the highway.

#### **The Person to whom the duty is owed**

This is any person who can be reasonably foreseen as coming within the tree's vicinity and being injured by a fall of the tree or a branch from the tree. Those using highways, footways, public footpaths, bridleways, railways and canals are likely to come within striking distance of trees on adjacent land. In public spaces, and semi-public spaces such as churchyards and school grounds. Those working in or visiting them can be expected to come within the vicinity of trees. On private land, visitors and employees can also be expected to come within the reach of trees. Trespassers may also, in certain circumstances, be expected to come within the vicinity of trees on private land.

### ***The Duty Owed***

This can be stated in general terms as being a duty to take reasonable care for the safety of those who may come within the vicinity of a tree. The courts have endeavoured to provide a definition of what amounts to reasonable care in the context of tree safety, and have stated that the standard of care is that of "the reasonable and prudent landowner". The tree owner is not, however, expected to guarantee that the tree is safe. They have to take only reasonable care such as could be expected of the reasonable and prudent landowner. The duty owed under the tort of nuisance is owed by a tree owner to the occupier of neighbouring land. The duty, however, is no different to the general

duty owed under the tort of negligence. It is the duty holder's fundamental responsibility, in taking reasonable care as a reasonable and prudent landowner, to consider the risks posed by their trees. The level of knowledge and the standard of inspection that must be applied to the inspection of trees are of critical importance. It is at this point that the balance between the risk posed by trees in general terms, the amenity or other values of trees and the cost of different types of inspection and remedial measures becomes relevant.

### ***The Standard of Inspection***

The courts have not defined the standard of inspection more precisely than the standard of "the reasonable and prudent landowner". In individual cases, the courts have sought to apply this general standard to the facts of each case. However, there is no clear and unambiguous indication from the courts in regard to the extent of the knowledge about trees a landowner is expected to bring to tree inspection in terms of type and regularity of inspection. Generally, the courts appear to indicate that the standard of inspection is proportional to the size of and resources available (in terms of expertise) to the landowner. It is of note that the HSE states in the HSE sector information minute Management of the risk from falling trees (HSE 2007), that: "for trees in a frequently visited zone, a system for periodic, proactive checks is appropriate".

## ***The Criminal Law***

The Health and Safety at Work act 1974 places a duty on employers to ensure, so far as is reasonably practicable, that in the course of conducting their undertaking, employees and members of the public are not put at risk (sections 2(1) and 3(1) respectively, see also 3(2) in respect of self-employed persons). The acts of felling or lopping a tree clearly fall within the scope of this duty. It is also likely that the growing and management of trees on land falls within the scope of the duty if such operations fall within the employer's undertaking. The duty is subject to the words "so far as is reasonably practicable". This proviso requires an employer to address the practical and proportionate precautions which can be taken to reduce a risk. The courts have generally been unwilling to take into account environmental or aesthetic values when considering whether a step is reasonably practicable, confining the consideration to whether a precautionary step can "practically" be undertaken. Nevertheless, in *HSE v North Yorkshire County Council* (20.5.10) Wilkie J., when directing the jury as to the meaning of "reasonably practicable", identified as a material consideration "the benefits of conducting the activity". He said (NTSG emphasis):

"Now, in this context what does 'reasonably practicable' mean? Well, as you have been told correctly, it is a narrower concept than what is physically possible. It requires a computation to be made by the employer in which the amount of risk is placed on one scale and the sacrifice involved in the measures necessary for averting the risk, whether in terms of money, time or trouble, or the benefits of conducting the activity, are placed

in the other. If there is a gross disproportion between them where the risk to health and safety is insignificant in relation to the sacrifice and/or loss of benefit involved in averting that risk then the defendant discharges the onus upon him and is entitled to be acquitted, but if the defendant does not persuade you of that on the balance of probabilities then you would convict."

The management of Health and Safety at Work regulations 1999 require employers, and self-employed persons, by regulation 3 to "make a suitable and sufficient assessment of the risks to the health and safety of persons not in his employment arising out of or in connection with the conduct by him of his undertaking". This requires an employer, and a self-employed person, to undertake a risk assessment of the tree stock on the land which forms part of the undertaking.

Breach of the duty under the act, or the regulations derived from the act, can give rise to a criminal prosecution against the employer.



## 6 Reasonable, balanced tree risk management

### *Responsible Management*

Landowners who already sensibly manage their trees can be reasonably confident that there is no need for any radical change driven by a fear of the law, though they may find this guidance useful when reviewing management practice. No tree can be guaranteed to be safe. As long as we retain trees, we cannot achieve zero risk. A disproportionate response to the actual risks posed by trees leads to unnecessary intervention, particularly alongside roads and public places. Disproportionately responding to risk itself runs the risk of diminishing the landscape and depriving the whole community of the enjoyment of trees and their wider benefits.

### *Legal Requirements*

The law requires only that people should take reasonable care to avoid acts or omissions which cause a reasonably foreseeable risk of injury to persons or property. The generally agreed standard to be achieved is that of a reasonable and prudent landowner.

### *Low Risks and Common Sense*

Generally speaking, the existing tree management regimes in the UK's towns, cities and countryside contribute to the acknowledged low risk of anyone being killed or injured by a fallen or falling tree or branch. The normal practices that have prevailed over the past decades have, in large measure, been reasonable and proportionate. These management regimes have worked in conjunction with people's common sense approach to appraising risk from trees.

### *Defendable Practice*

Defendable management is consistent with a duty of care based on reasonable care, reasonable likelihood and reasonable practicability. Landowners and managers who know how important their trees are tend to take an interest in them; including their setting and how people use their land and the benefits that trees bring. It is reasonable that decisions regarding tree safety are considered against a background of the general low risk from falling trees. Being reasonable involves taking actions proportionate to the risk. Reasonable tree management has both reactive and proactive elements. While the owner or manager may need to react to events involving dangerous trees as they arise, it is also prudent to have forward-looking procedures to keep tree-related risks at an acceptable level. These procedures need not be complicated and may be incorporated into a tree strategy or management plan where applicable.

## 7 Defect and obvious defect

### *What is a defect?*

The term “defect” can be misleading, as the significance of structural deformities in trees (variations from a perceived norm) can be extremely variable. NTSG definition: “a defect in the context of the growing environment of a tree is a structural, health or environmental condition that could predispose a tree to failure”.

### *What is an Obvious defect?*

The courts and specialist literature often apply the term “obvious” when referring to tree defects of which an owner or adviser should be aware. Obvious defects are likely to be so apparent that most people, whether specialist or not, would recognise them. While obvious defects may include external indications of potential structural failure, they take many forms, not all of which are significant hazards. Defects pose risks only where there is a likelihood of harm. An obvious risk defect might be a large tree that is clearly breaking up over a well-used road. A person doing a safety inspection is on the lookout for obvious defects posing a serious and present risk, particularly where the danger is immediate.

## 8 Key steps in tree safety management

### *The Essentials*

A reasonable and balanced approach forms the basis of a tree safety strategy for sensible tree safety management. By a “strategy”, we mean a plan that guides management decisions and practice, in a reasonable and cost-effective way, typically covering three essential aspects:

- zoning: appreciating tree stock in relation to people or property
- tree inspection: assessing obvious tree defects
- managing risk at an acceptable level: identifying, prioritising and undertaking safety work according to level of risk

A tree safety strategy may not necessarily be supported by extensive records. It may be self-evident through general prudent practice and behaviour. Alternatively, a strategy may be explicitly formulated and expressed through documents relating to management practice. If reasonably carried out, the strategy should meet the duty of care required by law, without the need for an overly bureaucratic approach or excessive paperwork. In the event of an accident, documents may provide supporting evidence that reasonable care has been taken.



### ***Keeping Records***

Records, including maps, provide the basis for safety management reviews and, in the extremely rare event of an accident, can support evidence of reasonable tree management. It is not necessary to record every tree inspected. However, records of trees presenting a serious risk and requiring treatment are useful, as is a record of how they have been treated. When inspections are carried out, records can demonstrate that the owner or manager has met a key component of their duty of care. Other useful ways of demonstrating reasonable assessment and management of trees include recording recommendations for work and when tree work has been carried out.

### ***Zoning***

Zoning is a practice whereby landowners and managers define areas of land according to levels of use. This practice prioritises the most used areas, and by doing so contributes to a cost-effective approach to tree inspection, focusing resources where most needed. It contributes to sensible risk management and a defensible position in the event of an accident. It may be a reasonable outcome of the zoning process to decide that no areas require inspection. Classifying levels of use in this way requires only a broad assessment of levels of use. Typically, two zones, high and low use, may be sufficient. High use zones are areas used by many people every day, such as busy roads, railways and other well-used routes, car parks and children's playgrounds or where property may be affected.

Low use zones are used infrequently and may only require irregular inspection if at all. While owners and managers may deem it appropriate to use a more sophisticated approach, designating three or more zones, in the event of an accident whichever system is adopted may require justification according to the standard set. Normally, the best person to do an initial assessment is someone familiar with the land, how it is used and what trees are present. Typically, this could be the landowner, occupier or land manager. It does not require a tree specialist to zone a site.



### ***Trees within falling distance of roads, railway etc***

Among the relatively few accidents from falling trees each year, the greatest risk to public safety has proved to be from trees within falling distance of where people move at speed in vehicles. However, even trees in well-used areas pose an extremely low overall level of risk to public safety. On average over the past decade, four people a year have died from roadside trees falling onto vehicles or from collisions with fallen trees, mainly because:

- risk of harm from falling trees is related to the force of impact
- the likelihood and extent of harm is influenced by the speed at which vehicles may impact
- risks are higher when vehicles are travelling at speed in high winds

It is both the high usage of roads and the speed at which people travel along them that makes this the most likely way that people will be killed by trees. Even in well-used areas, inspecting and recording each tree is not always necessary. Trees with structural faults, but valued for their habitat or amenity interests, that are retained in frequently used areas may require specific assessment and management. Trees in well-used natural woodland or woodland surrounding housing or a public park may only warrant an informal or non-onerous prioritised system of assessment to identify trees warranting closer inspection.

### ***Trees in infrequently used areas***

The risk of death or serious injury from trees in infrequently used areas is so low that it is reasonable that these should receive no formal inspection or visual check. However, owners may need to respond to any reports of problems.



## 9 Tree Inspections

The three types of inspections are:

- informal observations
- formal inspections
- detailed inspections

### Informal Observations

Informal observations of trees contribute to wider management and tree safety. They are essentially those day-to-day observations of trees made by owners and employees of a site who have good local knowledge of the trees and location and see them during the course of their daily lives and work. While not going out of their way to make an assessment of the condition of the tree, they are nonetheless aware of it and any changes that may occur over time. In some circumstances, informal observation may be considered reasonable and appropriate when owners and staff are able to assess the trees' health and any structural weaknesses that may pose an imminent threat to public safety.

#### ***Persons suitable for undertaking informal inspections***

Informal observations may be undertaken by: people with good local knowledge and familiarity with local trees who are not tree specialists, but rather those closely associated with a property, such as the owner, gardener, other employee or agent, who understands the way the property is used (areas most and least frequented) and the extent of the danger, should a tree be found that is clearly falling apart or uprooting. Reports of problems by staff or members of the public are a fundamental part of informal observations and should be acted upon.

#### ***Frequency of informal inspections***

Informal observations contribute significantly to public safety, being important for deciding when action is needed and when more formal assessment is appropriate. They are generally ongoing and undertaken as a given part of daily life on a site with trees and public access.

## Formal Inspections

Formal inspection of a tree is when a specific visit to the tree is made with the sole purpose of performing an inspection that is not incidental to other activities. The spectrum of formal inspection ranges from survey work for tree inventories, to health and condition assessments. These may be carried out through drive-by and walk-over inspections or ground-based visual checks. Drive-by and walk-over inspections are accepted types of reasonable risk assessment under certain circumstances. It should be noted that reliance on drive-by inspections is not appropriate in busy urban areas. Initial drive-by inspections can, when appropriate, assist in deciding where tree management, walk-over or detailed inspection might be necessary. Simple formal inspection, through ground level visual checks in the course of walk-over surveys, provides a useful, cost-effective means of identifying clear and present signs of immediate instability (uprooting or other structural failure). This is an important means of identifying when further action is needed, including immediate tree surgery or further detailed inspection.

Persons suitable for undertaking formal inspections  
Formal inspections should be undertaken by people who have been trained in tree inspections. People who do not necessarily have specific tree-related qualifications but have been trained in a Basic Tree Inspection course, such as the one ran by Lantra (Lantra Awards) and do have a general knowledge of trees and the ability to recognise normal and abnormal appearance and growth for the locality can be appropriate. This includes an ability to recognise obviously visible signs of serious ill health or significant structural problems, such as substantial fractured branches or a rocking

root plate which, were they to cause tree failure, could result in serious harm. They also need the ability to assess approximate tree height and falling distance from the tree to the area of use as well as when to request a detailed inspection.

### *Frequency of inspections*

Formal inspections will be undertaken as part of the implementation of the tree strategy or management plan for the site. Their frequency will be determined as a consequence of the zoning of the site together with consideration of prioritisation of the risk and the resources available to manage that risk. The decision is a judgment for the owner, agent or adviser, applying sensible reasonable behaviour in taking account of the site circumstances as a basis for good practice.

### *Detailed Inspection*

Detailed inspection of a tree should be applied for individual, high-value trees giving high-priority concern in well-used zones. The detailed inspection is normally prioritised according to the level of safety concern. It entails an initial ground-level, visual assessment by a competent qualified and trained Arboriculturalist looking at the exterior of the tree for signs of structural failure. In a few special cases, further detailed investigations may be required, involving one or more of the following: soil and root condition assessments, aerial inspections of upper trunk and crown, or other procedures to evaluate the nature of suspected decay and defects, including using specialist diagnostic tools. Detailed inspections are therefore unusual, typically reserved for trees valued for their heritage, amenity or habitat and which are suspected of posing a high level of risk, as already identified through owner interest or a previous formal or informal assessment.



### ***Persons suitable for undertaking detailed inspections***

Detailed assessments should be undertaken by an appropriately competent person, usually a qualified and well trained Arboricultural Consultant experienced in the field of investigation that is to be carried out. Whoever is commissioning the detailed inspection should satisfy themselves as to the suitability of the inspector's qualifications, experience and professional indemnity and public liability insurance. A specialist involved in conducting a detailed tree inspection should be able to demonstrate the reasonable basis for allocating risks according to priority, and identify cost-effective ways of managing those tree-related risks.

### ***Frequency of inspections***

Detailed inspection of a tree will normally be undertaken as a consequence of information obtained following informal observation or formal inspection of the tree. Alternatively, if the tree is a special tree it may be placed on a regular inspection regime that is determined by its location and the risk it poses.

### ***Special Trees***

Informal observation and formal inspections both have a reasonable likelihood of identifying trees posing a risk of serious harm in the near future. Important trees that owners want to retain, eg for heritage, habitat or visual amenity, but which may present a significant risk, are likely to require regular specialist detailed inspection to manage them without serious loss of the benefits they provide. Like formal inspections, the decision on the frequency of these inspections is a judgment for the owner and their advisers based on the circumstances and applying sensible reasonable behaviour as a basis for good practice.



*Fire and Impact damaged oak tree - Priory Park, St Neots*

## 10 Reducing Risks by managing Access

For sites where special events greatly increase the number of people in the area within falling distance, restricting access is the best option. A large number of people on a site in very wet conditions can compact soil and harm tree roots. Though the effects of root damage can be slow to develop, they increase risks of tree failure.

### Ways to reduce risks in well-used areas include:

- deterring informal parking beneath trees; damage to roots may not be apparent for many years and increases risk of failure
- re-locating facilities such as play equipment, seats, picnic tables, barbecues, information boards, commemorative plaques, hides, fishing platforms, horse jumps, feeding centres etc
- re-routing paths and tracks where legally allowed
- redesigning mown paths in areas of long grass, a proven method of directing people away from high-risk zones
- placing structures and assembly points beyond the falling range of trees

### Effective ways of deterring access to areas/ specific trees:

- planting brambles and thorny shrubs
- using logs or piles of deadwood
- allowing grass to grow
- leaving brushwood around the tree
- temporary exclusion in adverse weather conditions
- changing the area's use, eg to hay meadow and for grazing



## 11 Balancing Risk with Benefits

Outdoor activity increases in fine weather, with people remaining longer in certain areas. In summer, one option to reduce risk from falling branches is by the simple practice of not mowing under the trees' drip-line. However, within the play sector there is a strong recognition that it is important for children to get "back to nature", including interaction with trees. Decisions need therefore to balance benefits with risks when considering segregating trees and people.

## 12 Sources of advice

### National Tree Safety Group (NTSG) guidance on tree safety management

The NTSG was formed in 2007 to agree a nationally recognised approach to tree risk management. The Group was composed of organisations from both public and private sectors, bringing together land owners, government agencies, academics and arboricultural interests to work towards a common approach on how tree owners should manage their trees for safety in ways that are proportionate to the risk posed and defensible should the need arise. It published its guidance in December 2011. The main booklet is titled "Common sense risk management of trees - guidance on trees and public safety in the UK for owners, managers and advisers".

As well as the full guidance booklet, there are two supplementary documents – a landowner summary document for estates and smallholdings, and a householder leaflet for the individual domestic tree owner:

1. "Common sense risk management of trees - guidance on trees and public safety in the UK for owners, managers and advisers". Published in December 2011, available for £19.99 plus P&P. ISBN: 978-0-85538-840-9. Forestry Commission stock code FCMS024.
2. "Common sense risk management of trees - landowner summary of guidance on trees and public safety in the UK for estates and smallholdings". ISBN 978-0-85538-841-6. Forestry Commission stock code FCMS025.
3. "Managing trees for safety" - a leaflet for the domestic tree owner ISBN 978-0-85538-842-3. Forestry Commission stock code FCMS026.

Online PDF downloads and hard copies of all these may be obtained from the Forestry Commission's publications website: [http://www.forestry.gov.uk/website/publications.nsf/\\$\\$Search](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/website/publications.nsf/$$Search).  
[Search term – "NTSG"]

## Other guidance

The Visitor Safety in the Countryside Group has its own on-line guidance on tree safety management at <http://vscg.co.uk/good-practice/published/tree-safety-management>.

The Health and Safety Executive has guidance for its own inspectors – "Management of the risk from falling trees" - on its web site at: [http://www.hse.gov.uk/foi/internalops/sims/ag\\_food/010705.htm](http://www.hse.gov.uk/foi/internalops/sims/ag_food/010705.htm).

The Inland Waterways Association has a 2007 policy document on its web site at: [https://www.waterways.org.uk/information/policy\\_documents/management\\_of\\_trees](https://www.waterways.org.uk/information/policy_documents/management_of_trees)

National Tree Safety Group (NTSG)

Arboricultural Association

Hazards from Trees: Forestry Commission guide

Visitor Safety in the Countryside Group



## 3.8 Guidance Note 8: Tree Related Claims Management

### 1 Introduction

Huntingdonshire District Council currently spends officer time and money on dealing with and settling tree related insurance claims. The process of settling claims can cause distress to claimants and local residents and where supported by inadequate evidence can become a prolonged process. A proactive approach to the management of tree related claims should reduce the time taken to deal with such claims and reduce Council spending in this area.

This note provides guidance on how the District Council will deal with claims made against it in relation to trees it owns or is responsible for and where the threat of an insurance claim is being used to justify the removal of a tree protected by a Tree Preservation Order or within a Conservation Area.

For the purpose of this guidance the term claimant means any person or party who is claiming that a tree should be pruned or removed or that some form of monetary payment should be made because the tree is causing, is believed likely to cause or has already caused some form of damage to a property resulting in a financial loss. The term claimant will also be used to describe the person or party who is justifying the pruning or felling of a protected tree on the basis that it has caused damage, resulting in a financial loss regardless of whether the person or party own tree. The term claim will mean any attempt to seek compensation due to a tree related loss such as subsidence or where the removal of a protected tree is being sought because it is being blamed for damage or a financial loss. The latter may not result in a financial liability but may result in the removal of a protected tree.

### 2 Purpose of the guide

The purpose of the guide is to:

- a** To reduce the number of existing unresolved claims providing a clear procedure for assessing claims and valuing the implicated trees.
- b** To reduce the number of claims in the future by providing clear guidance on the information required from claimants and the procedure that will be adopted for assessing claims and valuing the implicated trees
- c** Ensure that the District Council is provided with sufficient information to enable an assessment of the validity of the claim being made. (To assist this process a tree claim report pro forma is provided at appendix xxxxxx)
- d** To enable the District Council to challenge unwarranted claims where evidence is inaccurate or poorly investigated.
- e** To assist the Council in making decisions on the retention or otherwise where protected trees are being implicated in damage to property, where that damage is being used to justify the removal or heavy pruning of the implicated tree.



### 3 Background

This guidance is informed by the work carried out by the London Tree Officers Association (LTOA) which is published in their Risk Limitation Strategy for Tree Root Claims which is available on the LTOA website at:

***[http://www.ltoa.org.uk/component/docman/doc\\_download/126-the-risk-limitation-strategy-for-tree-root-claims](http://www.ltoa.org.uk/component/docman/doc_download/126-the-risk-limitation-strategy-for-tree-root-claims)***

### 4 Reducing existing unresolved and future claims relating to trees owned by the Council

The Council owns or has responsibility for many trees on land it owns, land it rents or leases and land for which it is responsible under agency agreements with other organisations such as Cambridgeshire County Council. These trees represent a variable degree of risk in terms of third party claims for damage. To reduce the current and future liability the Council will take tree management steps including the surveying of trees and where appropriate the removal and replacement of high risk trees.

Table 1 below sets out the key actions the Council will take in relation to reducing claims against it for damage to property alleged to have been caused by trees owned by the Council.



Actions the Council will undertake:	Notes
1. The council will review all existing unresolved claims to ensure the information provided by the claimant meets the standard required by the council for claims	Where claimants submissions fall below the Councils standard for supporting evidence, deficiencies will be brought to the attention of the insurers and loss adjusters and challenged.
2. Challenge unwarranted claims based on poorly investigated or inaccurate evidence.	Where claimants submissions fall below the Councils standard for supporting evidence, deficiencies will be brought to the attention of the insurers and loss adjusters and challenged.
3. Instigate a tree removal and replacement regime where building movement is known to be an issue.	The Council will allocate sufficient resources to enable a survey of its tree stock to be carried out and analysis to be carried out of tree locations, species and the incidence of claims.
4. Adopt specific evidence requirements for trees of value and apply them to existing claims.	Generally as the value of the tree increases, the requirement for detailed information will increase. Placing a value on the tree at an early stage in the process is a key element in deciding the Council's response to a claim.
5. Reject the claim where the evidence provided indicates another cause for movement. The claimant will be informed of the Council's decision.	The tree claim report pro-forma will provide the mechanism to make a decision.

Table 1

Review of existing claims may be carried out by administrative staff against a pro forma check list of information requirements needed for a claim to be validated.

By reviewing the portfolio of existing claims in a structured manner using the criteria adopted by the Council it will be possible to reduce the current level of liability by identifying claims which are not adequately supported by the evidence provided. By robustly reviewing existing claims the balance of probabilities that the causal factor in the damage claim is the tree is likely to be incorrect in some cases and the Council will then be able to argue that there is no blame attached to the tree or a proportionate amount of blame so that the whole value of the claim does not lie with the tree.

By reviewing existing claims in a systematic, robust and logical way it is likely future claims will be reduced in number and value as the need for properly investigated evidence is realised by claimants. Thereby reducing the number of speculative claims based on insufficient supporting evidence.

Once a new claim has been received, existing claims will be reviewed in light of this guidance, and the Council will decide whether to accept the claim or challenge it. A structured approach is recommended so that unwarranted claims, where the tree is a convenient scapegoat for the damage, can be filtered out and rejected at an early stage. In this case there are likely to be many contributing factors in the resultant damage which may require the input of the Council's building surveyors, engineers and an understanding of local conditions to aid the rejection of an unwarranted claim. Resources will be required to enable a proper assessment of the claim to include the input of the Council's engineers and surveyors. However

as the process of challenging claims reduces the Council's liability the cost to the Council of dealing with successful claims will diminish and the claim culture which blames the tree first will change as the requirement for properly substantiated claims is understood by claimants.

Part of the process for reducing the number and value of claims is reducing the risk of claims by better management of the Councils own tree stock. Item 2 of table 1 above requires a survey of trees so that the risk of damage caused by trees can be reduced. A program of removal and replacement of trees which present a high risk should be implemented as soon as appropriate funding has been identified and secured.

Criteria for selective removal and replacement of trees are:

If the evidence presented demonstrates the tree is, on the balance of probability, the actual cause of the damage and regular pruning would be unlikely to mitigate the tree's effect

That the tree should be in such poor condition that cyclical pruning would either kill it or lead to its having a NIL value (See CAVAT appendix B).

That the tree is one which requires an uneconomically high level of attention with regard to claims, complaints, structural faults, etc. Such as regular pruning and frequent repairs to damaged structures.

That the BRE Category of damage is 3 or above and that the sum of the investigative evidence suggests that pruning will not control the situation even if repeated annually.

Investigation of the specifics of the particular case shows that there would be benefit in starting again with a new specimen.



In the long-term, tree removal and replacement will result in costs being reduced as the replacement trees would not constitute a high subsidence risk to property.

The actions recommended above may result in political and public resistance to tree removal and in some cases replacement. Replacement planting may be difficult to establish leading to a reduction in the tree cover in previously well treed areas. These risks need to be considered against the cost of maintaining the tree and the possibility of meeting expensive claims for damages.

## 5 Privately Owned Trees Covered by Tree Preservation Orders:

The Council will undertake a review of all existing undecided protected tree applications and challenge those claims based on poorly investigated and inaccurate evidence. For the purposes of this guidance all trees covered by a Tree Preservation Order are necessarily deemed to be within the “High” category listed below in Section 6, Levels of Evidence.

The relative value of trees is an important consideration when deciding what action is appropriate when dealing with subsidence related tree cases. The method adopted by the Council for the evaluation of trees is CAVAT. The CAVAT method is widely published and has become an accepted standard by which tree values are calculated. CAVAT is included in The LTOA risk limitation strategy available at: [http://www.ltoa.org.uk/component/docman/doc\\_download/126-the-risk-limitation-strategy-for-tree-root-claims](http://www.ltoa.org.uk/component/docman/doc_download/126-the-risk-limitation-strategy-for-tree-root-claims)

Trees which score low using CAVAT but which are protected by a TPO or by being within a Conservation Area may be dealt with without the need for supporting evidence. However care should be taken to ensure that the Council is not seen to be agreeing with the claim that the tree caused the damage. The decision should be made without prejudice on the basis that the tree did not warrant the continuation of formal protection by a TPO.

The Council will carry out the following actions in relation to reducing applications for tree works or removal of trees covered by Tree Preservation Orders due to claims that a tree(s) is causing damage:

- Allocate sufficient resources to enable the review of evidence being used to support existing unresolved protected tree applications
- Where inadequacies or discrepancies occur in the reports these should be brought to the attention of the insurers and the claim challenged.
- Adopt specific levels of evidence required for particular trees of amenity value and applying these to existing claims where applicable.
- Where the evidence clearly indicates another cause for movement the claim should be repudiated and the insurer informed of the local authority’s position.

The actions recommended above may result in political and public resistance to tree removal and in some cases replacement and may result in new evidence being presented which proves the case for the removal of the tree. A reduction in the value of a claim against the Council may result, however, if the decision is to refuse the application to remove a protected tree because of its high amenity value, this may result in legal challenges.



For an existing compensation claim to have been registered against the Council it must have already issued a tree works application Refusal Notice or be the subject of a “deemed refusal” following an appeal to The Secretary of State on a Tree Preservation Order application which has been refused or was undecided.

The same principles apply to reducing the numbers of existing claims in this area as for Council owned trees. That is, to systematically critique the evidence presented thereby accurately identifying the mechanism responsible for movement in the building. This permits the construction of a robust defence that may identify other causes of movement, exonerate the tree, or reduce the proportion of the claim attributed to the tree. In some cases the financial liability for the Council will be reduced or removed.

It is essential that in assessing the evidence presented the Council make co-operative use of all the expertise and knowledge base available to it within its own building control, structural engineering and tree section. By bringing all this expertise to bear on assessing the evidence presented, unwarranted claims are more easily dismissed and claims that do have merit may be mitigated proportionately.

## 6 Summary for reducing claims

By following the above guidance the local authority will be placing itself in the best possible position to reduce the numbers and cost of existing claims.

The principal mechanisms for this reduction will be:

- Providing regular and more consistent management of its own trees
- Identifying appropriate levels of evidence that can be applied in each case.
- Indicating to the claimant the need for appropriate evidence to support applications to remove trees on the basis of subsidence damage.
- Setting in place the necessary resources for scrutinising the evidence presented for each claim.
- Adopting a strategy of selective removal and replacement where appropriate.
- Identifying positive interpretations of the Tree Preservation Order compensation regulations to reinforce the Council's legal position.
- Co-operative advice sought from local authority building control, structural engineering and tree sections.

## 7 Technical information required by the Council in support of a claim

One of the most argued issues in dealing with tree related claims of all kinds is confirming the link between the tree and the damage. The causation of damage may be complicated but it is important that appropriate potential causes are investigated and evidence provided before the cause of the damage can be agreed.

The legal onus is always on the claimant to prove that the tree caused or contributed to the damage or loss. The Council should avoid undertaking its own surveys and tests for cost reasons but also to avoid unhelpful disagreements on the validity of two sets of data. The Council can however insist that the claimant provides appropriate survey information based on nationally accepted standards. The Council's engineer should be in agreement with the claimant's engineer on the level and type of survey information required to provide an accurate commentary on what is going on beneath the buildings foundations.

**Without this clear picture any claim against the Council or tree works application which claims damage or loss as a reason to fell or carry out inappropriate pruning can and should be rejected.**

Soil science and the influence of trees on shrinkable soils are complicated subjects. Some, and on occasion all, of the following information and test results should be considered as necessary and appropriate when considering a claim:

The following are listed in no particular order of importance

- Engineers report on assessment of damage to building. (Seat, nature and BRE category).
- Plan and profile of foundations.



- Plan of site showing location of building in relation to the trees both on the site and on neighbouring properties as well.
- Arboricultural report (not required for a low value tree that may be removed and replaced).
- Clear evidence that the ground is desiccated and that this has stemmed substantially from the presence of a tree. Clear evidence should include the following:
  - Trial pit cross section to underside of foundation depth plus borehole through base of trial pit to a minimum depth of 3m (explanation to be provided if borehole unable to reach 3m depth). Borehole log to be provided.
  - Root ID from beneath underside of foundation.
  - Soil moisture content readings at 0.5m centres, starting at the underside of the foundation, down to 3m depth of B/H.
  - Liquid limit test results at underside of foundation and approx 2m depth.
  - Plastic limit test results at underside of foundation and approx 2m depth.
  - Soil plasticity calculated from LL – PL.
  - Control borehole to 3m depth with log, with same tests as above, if it is possible to locate such a borehole on the site and remote from the influence of any vegetation. If impossible then explanation needed.
  - Oedometer or suction test results at underside of foundation & 1.0m centres down depth of 3m borehole ONLY when there is NO control borehole. If there is a control borehole then other tests listed are sufficient.
- Shear vane test results at 0.5m centres, starting at the underside of the foundation, down to 3m depth of borehole(s).
- CCTV & hydraulic testing to drains (excluding Water Board owned) located within 3m distance of area of subsidence damage. If unable to water test due to no access/blind entries/etc then give reason.
- Crack monitoring is required on a 6 weekly frequency and is to be set up ideally at time of first visit by building insurer representative or within 7 days of 1st visit. Send all available readings with Submission of Evidence.
- Soil sieving to determine soil particle size
- Level Survey
- Level monitoring with deep control datum

The level of evidence required to support a claim will vary from case to case. The Council should be mindful that the value of the tree may be relatively low and in such cases a reduced level of information is likely to be appropriate. Or if the tree is of no value its removal may be agreed without the need for the information listed above. Care should be exercised in responding in such cases and confirmation of the action to be taken worded in such a way that no acceptance of liability is implied.

**The claim report pro-forma sets out the basic information required and enables the need for additional information to be provided for the specific case being dealt with.**

It is not always the case that a tree within the area of potential influence of a building is the primary cause of subsidence or that felling it is the most appropriate action.



## 8 Linking Levels of Evidence to Value of Trees

In recent years, representatives of the local authority and insurance sectors have been looking for ways to grade the amount of information and test results that are required and relating this requirement to the quality and value of the tree implicated in the damage. This work has now been published as the Joint Mitigation Protocol-see further reading appendix C of LTOA - A Risk Limitation Strategy for Tree Root Claims. This would enable the insurance sector to know the cost of the reports they would need to commission prior to proceeding with accepting a member of the public's subsidence claim on their policy. It would also give risk managers and tree officers the ability to ask for much more detailed and better quality investigations when allegations are made regarding a tree of high value.

**No Value** - Dead, declining or structural defective trees with no intrinsic value. The trees satisfying this category will vary depending on location and proximity to the claimants property. For instance a nearly dead tree in a woodland belt may warrant retention in some form because of the ecological value it provides.

**Low Value** - A small relatively insignificant tree which could be easily replaced.

**Medium Value** - A tree that makes an important contribution to the area.

**High Value Tree** - A tree that makes an extremely important contribution to the area.



*Old Flowering Cherry tree at Claytons Way*



*Horse Chestnut tree at Valiant Square, Upwood*



## 9 Conclusion



*Oak trees adjacent to Warner's Park St Ives*

Trees are often implicated in claims which involve subsidence damage to buildings' often with little or no evidence to support the claim or indeed confirm the causal link between the damage and the tree. Establishing a procedure for requiring the claimant to properly support the contention that the tree is at least in part to blame is an important element of the process of dealing with claims and ensuring that the Council is not spending money it could use more effectively elsewhere. Defending such claims requires a systematic approach and sufficient information to enable a decision on how best to deal with the claim. Requiring such information will enable tenuous claims to be rejected immediately.

The potential financial savings to local authorities and insurance companies by adopting a systematic approach to dealing with claims outlined in this guidance note are considerable. The need and frequency of paying out large sums to settle claims will be reduced as the Council becomes better able to repudiate unsubstantiated claims. Equally, by presenting much more accurate and reliable investigative results at the onset of a claim, insurance companies should see their claims being dealt with much quicker, thereby reducing their costs and the potential for long drawn out and time consuming negotiations.

Trees are an essential prerequisite for people to live healthily and happily in urban areas. They do cause problems and difficulties from time to time but the benefits they bring far outweigh these difficulties. By following these guidelines, a sensible and cost-effective approach can be taken towards managing claims for tree removal and/ or financial compensation for damage allegedly caused by trees.





### 3.9 Guidance Note 9: Information for the General Public from the East Anglian Tree and Landscape Officers Group, Ash Dieback (*Chalara fraxinea*)

#### 1 Introduction

Ash Dieback is a fungal pathogen specific to Ash trees (*Fraxinus excelsior*) which has infected and killed a large proportion of ash trees in Europe. It was first discovered in the UK in nursery stock in 2009 and has recently been discovered in ash trees growing in woods and plantations especially in Eastern England. It is thought that the fungus spores have been carried on the wind from Europe to infect trees here. It is unlikely that the disease can now be eradicated from Britain and it will ultimately infect most of our ash trees in a similar way to Dutch Elm Disease in the 1970's. There are hopes that perhaps some ash trees may show some form of resistance but this is largely aspirational.

Ash Dieback is now firmly established in East Anglia. Council officers are sharing information between authorities so that a well informed and consistent approach can be made in terms of managing the disease on publicly accessible land and also in the provision of advice to the public. This guidance note provides information on the disease, how and where it occurs and the possible options available for infected trees. The document concludes with some frequently asked questions and answers regarding the disease together with advice on where to go for further information.

#### 2 Description of the disease

Chalara dieback of ash is a serious disease of ash trees caused by a fungus called *Chalara fraxinea* (*C. fraxinea*), including its sexual stage, *Hymenoscyphus pseudoalbidus* (*H. pseudoalbidus*). The disease causes leaf loss and crown dieback in affected trees, and usually leads to tree death.

##### *Outbreak stage*

Ash trees suffering with *C. fraxinea* infection have been found widely across Europe since trees now believed to have been infected with this newly identified pathogen were reported dying in large numbers in Poland in 1992. These have included forest trees, trees in urban areas such as parks and gardens, and also young trees in nurseries. In February 2012 it was found in a consignment of infected trees sent from a nursery in the Netherlands to a nursery in Buckinghamshire, England. Since then it has been found in a number and variety of locations in Great Britain, including urban landscaping schemes, newly planted woodland, and more nurseries. In October 2012, Fera scientists confirmed a small number of cases in Norfolk and Suffolk in ash trees at sites in the wider natural environment, including established woodland, which do not appear to have any association with recently supplied nursery stock. Further similar finds have since been confirmed in Norfolk and Suffolk and in Kent, Essex and other counties. So far, though, the majority of such cases have been concentrated along the south-eastern seaboard of Great Britain, with a small number further north and west. (See map below)

*C. fraxinea* is now being treated as a quarantine pest under national emergency measures and any suspected sighting should be reported.

A Pest Risk Assessment (PRA) on *C. fraxinea* was published, and a formal consultation on its management held by Fera in September/October 2012.

Hundreds of staff from government agencies checked ash trees across the UK for signs of the disease during early November 2012. It was one of several actions to emerge from a meeting of the Government's emergency committee, COBR, which Environment Secretary Owen Paterson chaired in November 2012.

Plant health experts are also undertaking a survey of about a thousand sites which have received saplings (young trees) from nurseries where Chalara dieback has been found.

### ***Distribution***

Confirmed findings at 4 March 2013: Nursery sites - 19 Recently planted sites - 202 Wider environment, e.g. established woodland - 170  
Total: 391

Video: history of the pathogen.

### ***Symptoms***

Video: Spotting winter symptoms (above)

Video: Year round symptoms Symptoms picture guide

### ***Pdf guide***

Exotic pest alert which gives more information about the disease.

The Food & Environment Research Agency (Fera) has also produced this video presenting and explaining the main symptoms.



### 3 Managing infected trees

You are not required to take any particular action if you own infected ash trees, unless we or another plant health authority serves you with a statutory Plant Health Notice requiring specified actions. You should, however, monitor the trees' safety as the disease progresses, and prune or fell them if they or their branches threaten to fall and cause injury or damage. You can also help to slow the spread of the disease to other ash trees in your area by, where practicable, collecting up and burning, burying or composting the fallen leaves, and by following our detailed advice and guidance. Infected trees will require more frequent assessment with regard to health and safety as the likelihood of failure increases as the damage to affected trees progresses. As with all tree health and safety issues a risk assessment should be used to confirm the frequency of inspection and the level of qualification required by the person carrying out the inspection.

### 4 Reporting suspected cases

If you think you have spotted the disease, please check our symptoms video and symptoms guide , and our guide to recognising ash trees, before using our Tree Alert form.

You can also download our free Tree Alert app to your smartphone or tablet.

We are very grateful for the many reports we have received from the public and partners. We are working through the reports, and are sorry that we might not be able to respond to each report individually. However, every one of them will be assessed, and for each report we will:

- prioritise action according to our existing knowledge of the disease's distribution; and
- decide it isn't Chalara dieback of ash; or
- ask for more information, which might include asking for photographs; or
- arrange for someone to do a further investigation on site.

The disease does not spread via spores from the fungus during the winter, so we have the time to carefully examine all the reports.



## 5 Understanding of the disease

Government scientists have set out the most up-to-date understanding of the disease. Their assessment agreed with the earlier Pest Risk Analysis carried out in August, and concluded that:

- the spores are unlikely to survive for more than a few days;

- spore dispersal on the wind is possible from mainland Europe;
- trees need a high dose of spores to become infected;
- the spores are produced from infected dead leaves during the months of June to September;
- there is a low probability of dispersal on clothing or animals and birds;
- the disease will attack any species of ash;
- the disease becomes obvious in trees within months rather than years;
- wood products would not spread the disease if treated properly;
- once infected, trees can't be cured; and
- not all trees die of the infection, and some are likely to have genetic resistance.

Government scientists are working with their counterparts in other countries to learn from existing and emerging research and practical experience in combating the disease in countries which have had it for longer than the UK. They are also approaching companies with proposed treatment solutions for Chalara to rapidly evaluate their research to see whether they have potential for further testing and development.

A key scientific facts paper has been prepared by the expert group led by the Chief Scientific Adviser, Sir John Beddington.



## 6 Import and movement restrictions

A Plant Health Order 2012 (pdf) prohibits all imports of ash seeds, plants and trees into Great Britain, and all movement of ash seeds, plants and trees within Great Britain. This is to prevent further spread of the disease.

New requirements for statutory notification of imports of Fraxinus (Ash) - as well as Castanea (Sweet chestnut), Platanus (Plane) and Quercus (Oak) - came into effect on 17 January 2013.

## 7. Frequently asked questions

Q1 How do I tell if I have infected ash trees?

The main symptoms are:

- Dead branches
- Blackening of leaves which often hang on the tree
- Discoloured stems often in a diamond shape where a leaf was attached

Double check the symptoms at the website; [www.forestry.gov.uk/chalara](http://www.forestry.gov.uk/chalara) or report them to the helpline: 08459 335577.

### Q2 What can the public do to help slow down the spread of Chalara

If you see symptoms of the disease report them to the helpline

If you walk in woodlands stick to the paths and clean your boots and dogs before you leave to remove any mud or leaves. Bike tyres should also be cleaned. Do not take away any leaf litter or wood.

### Q3 I am a householder with affected leaves from a confirmed infected tree. What do I do?

Leave them where they fall

If you need to clear the leaves you should compost, bury or burn them in your garden. Do not remove compost made from infected leaves from your garden. Do not put infected leaves in your brown garden waste bin. If you burn the leaves please be considerate of your **neighbours and do not cause nuisance from smoke.**

**For more information :** <http://www.forestry.gov.uk/forestry/inf-d-92gjvb>



**Q4 Do infected mature trees have to be cut down?**

No. At present infected mature ash trees do not have to be cut down.

If infected trees need to be cut down for safety or other reasons the wood branches and leaves should be disposed of on-site by composting or burning. If you burn the material please be considerate of your neighbours and do not cause nuisance from smoke. Where on-site disposal is not feasible please contact the council for further advice.

Please check with HDC call centre, 01480 388388, to check if there are any tree constraints affecting your property.

**Q5 How do landowners request permission to undertake tree works on ash trees that could be affected with *Chalara fraxinea*?**

Any application should follow the existing established procedure for consenting to tree works as undertaken by the district council's Arboricultural Officer.

**Q6 Where do I seek advice if I am concerned that trees on my land may be infected with *Chalara fraxinea*?**

Owners should seek advice from a qualified arborist, unless it is considered that there may be an immediate risk to safety, then the district Council's Arboricultural Officer should be contacted.

Information on Forestry Commission website:  
<http://www.forestry.gov.uk/chalara>

**8. Further information**

Please first see our Questions and Answers brief (added below) or contact:

Chalara helpline: 08459 33 55 77 (8am - 6pm daily) or [plant.health@forestry.gsi.gov.uk](mailto:plant.health@forestry.gsi.gov.uk)

## **Appendix A – Frequently asked questions about ash dieback – produced by FERA**

### **1. What exactly is Ash dieback?**

Chalara dieback of ash is a disease of ash trees (*Fraxinus* species) caused by an asexual fungal organism called *Chalara fraxinea* (*C. fraxinea*) and its sexual stage, *Hymenoscyphus pseudoalbidus* (*H. pseudoalbidus*). For ease of reference, *Chalara fraxinea* is used as the common term. The disease causes leaf loss and crown dieback in affected trees, and it usually leads to tree death. The *C. fraxinea* fungus has caused widespread damage to ash tree populations in continental Europe since it was first reported as an unknown new disease in Poland in 1992. It is especially destructive of common ash (*Fraxinus excelsior*), including its 'Pendula' ornamental variety. Narrow-leaved ash (*Fraxinus angustifolia*) is also susceptible. Chalara dieback of ash is particularly destructive of young ash plants, killing them within one growing season of symptoms becoming visible. Older trees can survive initial attacks, but tend to succumb eventually after several seasons of infection.

### **2. What is the situation in Great Britain?**

It was unknown in Great Britain until the first case was confirmed in ash plants in a nursery in Buckinghamshire early in 2012, in a consignment which had been imported from The Netherlands. Since then, more infected plants have been confirmed in nurseries in a wide range of locations in England and Scotland, and in recent plantings of young ash trees at a variety of sites supplied by nurseries, including a car park, newly planted woodland and a college campus. Our colleagues in Fera and the Scottish Government are continuing work to trace and inspect plants which had already been sold on to retail customers from the infected nursery consignments.

In October and November 2012 infection was confirmed for the first time in the wider natural environment in longer-established situations, such as woodlands and hedgerows, in East Anglia, Essex and Kent. These trees appear to have had no recent connection with nursery supplied plants or imports of ash plants from mainland Europe, so we are investigating how the fungus got to these sites. Given their proximity to mainland Europe, we cannot rule out the possibility of some sort of natural introduction, such as wind-borne spores from mainland Europe, and we are investigating the likely consequences

On 29 October 2012, following the publication of a Pest Risk Analysis and a consultation with the industry and affected parties, the UK Government passed emergency legislation restricting imports into and movements within Great Britain of imported ash plants, seeds and trees in a bid to prevent any more accidental introductions into and spread within Britain of the disease. Details of this legislation are available in this Questions and Answers document.

Northern Ireland and the Republic of Ireland have introduced similar legislation.



### 3. What are the symptoms?

See our Symptoms Guide and Pest Alert for a description and pictures of the symptoms.

### 4. What should I do if I think my ash trees have the disease?

If you think you have spotted the disease, please check our symptoms video and pictorial guide to symptoms before reporting it using our Tree Alert form.

### 5. How much of a threat is it to Britain's ash trees?

It is potentially a very serious threat. It has caused widespread damage to ash populations in continental Europe, including estimated losses of between 60 and 90 per cent of Denmark's ash trees. We have no reason to believe that the consequences of its entering the natural environment in Britain would be any less serious. Experience on the Continent indicates that it kills young ash trees very quickly, while older trees tend to resist it for some time until prolonged exposure causes them to succumb as well.

### 6. How is it spread?

Local spread, up to some tens of miles, may be via wind. Over longer distances the risk of disease spread is most likely to be through the movement of diseased ash plants. Movement of logs or unsawn wood from infected trees might also be a pathway for the disease, although this is considered to be a low risk.

### 7. How did it get into Britain?

The first interception of diseased ash plants found in a Buckinghamshire nursery had entered Britain in a shipment of plants for planting from a supplier in the Netherlands, who had obtained them from a nursery in Belgium. Many of the other interceptions of infected plants had come from suppliers in mainland Europe. The discovery in October and November 2012 of infected trees in established woodlands near the south-east coast of England raises the possibility that a natural introduction of the fungus might have occurred, such as spores borne by the wind from mainland Europe across the North Sea and English Channel.

### 8. What other countries have *Chalara fraxinea*?

According to the European Plant Protection Organization (EPPO), Austria, Belgium, the Czech Republic, Finland, France, Germany, Hungary, Italy, Lithuania, the Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Slovenia and Sweden have confirmed its presence. On the basis of symptoms, the disease has also been observed in Denmark, Estonia, Latvia and Switzerland.

### 9. How were diseased ash plants allowed to enter Britain?

What regulatory protection measures were in place to stop it coming in? *C. fraxinea* is not a "regulated" plant disease in European Union plant health law, which means that ash plants moved between Member States are not subject to inspection. EU legislation allows Member States to take national measures to prevent the entry and spread of pests and diseases not found on their territory, and the UK introduced such legislation for Great Britain on 29 October 2012. Northern Ireland and the Republic of Ireland have similar legislation.

**10. What are you doing to deal with the current known introductions?**

Fera and Scottish Government inspectors have been following up plants involved with the different interceptions, requiring destruction of associated plants. A multi-agency, cross-border Outbreak Management Team has been formed, including representatives from all five countries in the British Isles. Forestry Commission staff have been redeployed from usual duties to survey the British countryside for signs of the disease, and a strategy to deal with it is being developed as research information and information about its extent is obtained and analysed.

**11. Will you be able to eradicate it?**

Where the disease is established it will be impossible to eradicate, but we are giving ourselves the best prospects by responding promptly to findings. We need to determine the extent to which the organism is present and whether it is established, which is why we encourage all those with an interest in trees and woodland to work with us to report any suspected findings.

**12. Why did FC/Fera not act before now?**

This has been an evolving situation. The organism which was at one time thought to be causing this disease has been present in Great Britain since the 1800s and is already widespread, so legislative action against it would not have been appropriate. But with better scientific techniques we now know that a different organism is responsible. The origins of this organism are not known.

**13. Why is this organism not regulated at EU level?**

The disease is already established in much of eastern and northern Europe, so action across the EU is not realistic. However, parts of the UK which remain free of the disease can be considered for “protected zone” status, which would introduce requirements for ash plants being moved into the UK to come from a designated “pest-free area” for *C. fraxinea*. This could be the next step after having introduced national legislation on this issue. No such pest-free areas have yet been designated in any country.

**14. Why can't we grow our own ash trees here instead of importing them?**

We can and do grow our own trees, and people have the option to specify British-grown trees and plants if they wish. We strongly advise tree and plant buyers to be very careful to specify healthy stock from reputable suppliers, to practise good plant hygiene and biosecurity in their own gardens and woodlands etc to prevent accidental spread of plant diseases, and to report any plant diseases. Buyers should also be aware that seed gathered from British trees is sometimes sent to nurseries in continental Europe to be cultivated before being reimported as seedlings.



### 15. I own or manage ash trees - how can I help?

There are several things you can do to help us get this disease under control.

**a. Be vigilant** – Chalara dieback could appear in ash trees anywhere in Britain. Early action is essential if we are to eradicate this disease from Britain before it becomes established. We therefore urge you to inspect frequently any ash trees in your care, and especially any which have been planted during the past five or so years. Make yourself familiar with the symptoms of Chalara dieback from the materials here. There are other causes of ash dieback, so it is important to distinguish them from Chalara dieback. However, if in doubt, report it.

**b. Report it** - Report suspicious symptoms to us or Fera - see Question 3 for details of where to report them.

**c. Buy with care** – Be careful when buying plants to buy only from reputable suppliers, and specify disease-free stock. A list of countries where *C. fraxinea* is known to be present is at Question 7.

**d. Be diligent** - Practise good plant hygiene and biosecurity in your own gardens and woodlands etc to prevent accidental spread of plant diseases. See our biosecurity advice for guidance on basic hygiene and biosecurity measures which you can take.

**e. Keep up to date** – Check our website regularly for updates on developments. 'Follow' our Tree Pest News account on Twitter at [www.twitter.com/treepestnews](http://www.twitter.com/treepestnews) to receive rapid intelligence of new developments, delivered by text or email. Information about a wide range of other tree pests and diseases can be accessed via our Tree pests and diseases page.

### 16. I have a woodland planting grant or felling-licence agreement with the Forestry Commission to plant ash trees this season. If I do not wish to take the risk of losing the ash trees to Chalara dieback, may I plant another species instead?

Now that movements of ash plants are prohibited, it is not possible to plant ash seedlings which are not already on the site. We are operating a flexible approach for those customers with existing grant or licence agreements which specify ash as a planting species, but it is essential that owners discuss the situation with their local Forestry Commission woodland officer before planting alternatives.

### 17. What species can I plant instead?

Species choice should be guided by management objectives and site conditions, and the decision tool Ecological Site Classification ESC3 is the key tool to help review options which are likely to be sustainable in the future climate.

Detailed guidance on species choice in native broadleaved woodland can be found in Harmer, R., Kerr, G. and Thompson, R. 2010 *Managing Native Broadleaved Woodland*, from <http://www.forestry.gov.uk/fr/INFD-89PDQH> There is a wide range of alternatives species for sites with brown-earth soils, including aspen, beech, birch, field maple, hornbeam, oak, lime, rowan, sweet chestnut and sycamore.

The species range is more restricted for calcareous soils, particularly shallow ones, and includes beech, birch, field maple, hawthorn, holly, lime, rowan, whitebeam and yew.

Alder, aspen, willows and oaks are possible alternatives on moist to wet soils.

On sites where there are few restraints, non-native species can also be considered, and guidance can be found in the tree species information on the Forest Research website and links therein.

Some of the alternative species to ash, such as beech, sycamore and Norway maple, are particularly susceptible to bark stripping by grey squirrels.

There is a wider range of species to choose from for the urban environment, and the Right Tree for a Changing Climate website provides information on more than 300 species.

#### **18. What advice do you have for the trade?**

Be careful about the sourcing of, and the specification for, your plants. (See question 7 for countries where *C. fraxinea* is present.) Keep good records of any imported stock, remain vigilant, inspect any recent plantings of ash, and report any suspicious signs to Fera or the Forestry Commission – see Question 3.

#### **19. What advice do you have for the public?**

We welcome reports of ash with Chalara dieback symptoms. We do ask that you take care first to ensure that the infected tree really is an ash, because they can look very similar to rowan trees (*Sorbus aucuparia*), which do not get the disease. (To add to the confusion, rowan trees are sometimes called mountain ash.)

Please also take care to ensure that the symptoms you report are Chalara dieback symptoms, and not the symptoms of some other, less-serious form of dieback or disease of ash tree. You can familiarise yourself with the symptoms with our guide, symptoms pdf and this video.

You should also follow the 'biosecurity' advice on any signs at affected sites, to avoid accidentally

#### **20. What does a Plant Health Notice involve?**

Owners of any recently planted ash plants which are found to be infected, or infected ash plants in nurseries or garden centres, can be served with statutory Plant Health Notices requiring them to destroy the plants, either by burning or deep burial on site, or to take steps to contain the disease on site. All ash plants in a new-planting site will initially be contained on the planting site, using biosecurity measures to prevent the disease spreading.

We may require that all ash plants on the site are destroyed to prevent the disease spreading, regardless of whether they express symptoms of the disease. This is because experience with other plant diseases shows that we must presume that asymptomatic plants in close proximity to symptomatic plants are almost certainly infected, but are not yet showing symptoms.

In an established woodland or similar site, the Plant Health Notice will require movement restrictions and biosecurity measures to prevent the disease being spread from the site while we consider our disease control strategy.

#### **21. Is there any compensation available for people who have to destroy ash plants under a Plant Health Notice?**

Unfortunately we are unable to offer compensation for plants destroyed to comply with a Plant Health Notice. It is felt that the available resources are best used for surveillance, research and eradication work. Plants are therefore purchased and planted at buyers' risk, and any questions about recompense would be between the customer and supplier of the plants involved.



## 22. Can the timber from infected ash trees still be used?

The implications for growers of ash for the timber trade would be significant if the disease were to become established in Britain. The timber in infected trees might still be usable for some purposes, although staining by the fungus might limit the range of end uses. However, it is not currently possible to move ash material out of confirmed infected woodlands or other sites which have been served with a Statutory Plant Health Notice. See our separate Questions and Answers about the details of the legislation imposing movement restrictions on ash material.

## 23. How many ash trees are there in Britain?

Common ash (*Fraxinus excelsior*) is the third most common native broadleaved tree species in Great Britain after oak and birch. The National Forest Inventory interim report 'Preliminary estimates of quantities of broadleaved species in British woodlands', published in December 2012, estimates that ash trees in woodlands greater than 0.5 hectares (1.25 acres) cover about 142 thousand hectares in Great Britain. It also estimates there are approximately 126 million live ash trees in woods greater than half a hectare. The report is available in the National Forest Inventory pages of this website. In addition, the complementary Countryside Survey Report estimates there are 38,500 hectares of ash trees in woodland smaller than 0.5 hectares, and that there are approximately 2.2 million individual ash trees outside woodland.

## 24. What is the distribution of ash trees?

Common ash is a deciduous, broadleaf species native to much of continental Europe and the British Isles, and a map of its European distribution is available on the pest alert.

This map of ash distribution shows its distribution in Great Britain, and indicates those managed by the Forestry Commission and those belonging to other owners. (Note that this map does NOT show where *Chalara dieback* has been found.)

## 25. How important are ash trees in Britain? What are their benefits?

Ash is a common component of many native woods and makes an important contribution to biodiversity and wildlife habitat. It is popular for landscaping urban facilities such as car parks. It is grown commercially for its dense, strong but elastic, easily worked hardwood, which was traditionally and commonly used for making tool handles and furniture. Usage has declined in these markets due to the advent of other materials, but the good-quality timber is still sought after for flooring and high-end, bespoke uses. It also makes excellent firewood, smoking wood and barbecue charcoal.

## 26. Where can I find more information?

There is further information about *Chalara fraxinea* on the EPPO website



**Public**  
**Key Decision - Yes**

## HUNTINGDONSHIRE DISTRICT COUNCIL

<b>Title/Subject Matter:</b>	Shared Service – Building Control
<b>Meeting/Date:</b>	Overview and Scrutiny Panel (Environmental Well-Being) – 15 <sup>th</sup> July 2014 Cabinet – 17 <sup>th</sup> July 2014
<b>Executive Portfolio:</b>	Strategic Planning and Housing
<b>Report by:</b>	Head of Development
<b>Wards affected:</b>	All Wards

---

### **Executive Summary:**

In May, South Cambridgeshire and Huntingdonshire District Councils announced a commitment to work towards a Strategic Partnership including for building control. At the 10<sup>th</sup> July 2014 meeting, Cabinet were due to consider a report which, amongst other recommendations, sought endorsement of a shared services programme incorporating Legal, ICT and Building Control.

A shared Building Control service has been operating in Norfolk since 2004. South Norfolk District Council has secured DCLG Transformation Funding to develop a regional Building Control partnership. The proposed partnership will provide Local Authority Building Control Services (LABC), and also set up an Approved Inspector Company. South Norfolk has developed an IT system that will support mobile working with the intention that it be used by participating authorities working as clusters across the region.

SCDC and HDC have worked together with South Norfolk DC since May to formulate outline proposals for a shared Building Control service that would form the basis of a Cambridgeshire Bedfordshire cluster within the regional Building Control partnership. A Memorandum of Understanding has been signed by the three authorities.

All local authorities in Cambridgeshire and Bedfordshire have been invited to enter into discussions with the aim of setting up a Building Control cluster, and an introductory meeting has been held.

This report seeks approval to develop a business case for a shared service with SCDC that would be part of a partnership with South Norfolk DC and use the mobile working and automated billing IT system. As a linked but separate project, approval is sought to work with local authorities across Cambridgeshire and Bedfordshire to develop a partnership Building Control service within a regional network.

This is a key decision because it is likely to result in the Council incurring expenditure which is, or the making of savings which are, significant having regard to the Council's budget for the service or function to which the decision relates. It was first published in the May 2014 Forward Plan.

**Recommendation(s):**

That Cabinet approve:

- (a) Option 1: To develop a business case for a shared Local Authority Building Control Service with South Cambridgeshire District Council
- (b) Option 2: For the business case to include a viability assessment of the IT solution developed by South Norfolk District Council
- (c) Option 3: To work with interested local authorities from Cambridgeshire and Bedfordshire to develop a proposal for a Local Authority Building Control cluster to operate within a regional network supported by South Norfolk District Council
- (d) Option 4: To work with South Norfolk District Council and other interested local authorities to develop a proposal for an Eastern Region Approved Inspector Company, that will interact with the Cambridgeshire and Bedfordshire Local Authority Building Control cluster.

## **1. WHAT IS THIS REPORT ABOUT/PURPOSE?**

- 1.1 To seek the approval of Cabinet to develop a business case for a shared Local Authority Building Control Service between Huntingdonshire and South Cambridgeshire District Councils, including use of the South Norfolk mobile working solution, and to work towards an Eastern Region Building Control partnership arrangement.

## **2. WHY IS THIS REPORT NECESSARY/BACKGROUND**

- 2.1 South Cambridgeshire District Council (SCDC) and Huntingdonshire Council (HDC) currently operate separate Building Control Services. Both services are well-regarded, but issues associated with small teams have arisen.
- 2.2 SCDC's service is provided by 6.8 FTE and Hunts 9 FTE (full time equivalent staff). The teams processed a combined total of 2390 applications in 2013/14 with a split of 1240 (52%) in Hunts and 1150 (48%) in SCDC. Both authorities have a similar profile of domestic and commercial applications and generated incomes of £406,000 (Hunts) and £337,625 (SCDC) in 2013/14 respectively. The services have identified that 18 % (Hunts) and 42% (SCDC) of the building control work is being done by Approved Inspectors and limited capacity within the existing teams would make it difficult for these Building Control teams to service new growth generated by the local Plans.
- 2.3 Current financial regulations stipulate that Local Authority Building Control (LABC) services cannot make a profit and statute requires the services to deliver a number of functions, such as enforcement for which costs are not recoverable. In light of budget constraints there is a need to generally maximise efficiencies.
- 2.4 Customers requiring a building control service can choose whether to use the local authority or an Approved Inspector (AI) to advise on building regulations and carry out the relevant inspections.
- 2.5 The Localism Act (2011) makes provision for local authorities to operate elements of their services on a commercial basis, subject to certain restrictions. As a result, the Building Control market is changing with a number of local authorities exploring how they can enter the AI market. Approved Inspectors are able to be profit-making, and have freedom to operate across wider geographical areas. If local authorities set up AI companies, profits could cross-subsidise other aspects of Building Control or other services.
- 2.6 There are a number of different AI models which are developing. South Norfolk District Council has developed and secured DCLG funding to support the development of a regional Building Control network including a Regional LABC and an Approved Inspector partnership. In parallel they are developing an integrated IT solution including mobile working and shared marketing material.
- 2.7 A LABC partnership has been operating in Norfolk since 2004. It is led by South Norfolk and includes Broadland, Norwich, Kings Lynn and West Norfolk. South Norfolk District Council is developing partnership arrangements with other local authorities in the eastern region. Currently Essex and Hertfordshire authorities are setting up shared service arrangements, with the intention that each county area will operate as a cluster in a regional hub and cluster arrangement to provide LABC and AI services. We have been asked to work with local authorities in Cambridgeshire and Bedfordshire to set up a

cluster covering these areas, and invited the local authorities to an introductory meeting. South Norfolk DC intends to share some of the DCLG Transformation Funding with each cluster. A Memorandum of Understanding has been signed by South Norfolk DC, HDC and SCDC agreeing to share information and develop outline partnership proposals.

### **3. OPTIONS CONSIDERED/ANALYSIS**

3.1 At a time of reducing budgets, shared service and commercially minded arrangements can offer an opportunity to sustain and improve the current levels of service.

3.2 Following the Cabinet decision in May 2014, HDC and SCDC have been exploring a number of options for delivery of a shared LABC service and in particular one which would meet the following objectives agreed by senior officers:

- Maximise potential to generate income
- Increase resiliency to drive competitiveness and enhance the customer experience
- Creating efficiencies by maximising other shared infrastructure as well as IT
- Maximise staff development opportunities

#### **Options**

##### **Option 1: Stand Alone Shared Local Authority Building Control Service between Huntingdonshire and South Cambridgeshire**

3.3 Our initial work together has identified that Huntingdonshire and South Cambridgeshire have commonalities in service delivery and culture which is advantageous in this context. Both have drive and enthusiasm to deliver high quality and efficient services, which are reflected in the shared objectives above. The alignment in strategic direction has enabled efficient working at this first stage in the project and will continue to provide a sound building block.

3.4 There are also differences, for example, the authorities use different IT operating systems. There are also differences in numbers of applications and the percentage of non-fee work.

3.5 Whilst preferable to a single service operating alone, the bringing together of two local authority services would not provide sufficiency resiliency for the LABC to maintain current market share within an increasingly aggressive Approved Inspector market. This presents a risk to both authorities in potential income reduction, placing additional pressure on the services when delivering their non-fee statutory services.

3.6 Additional investment in technology is essential to gain efficiencies required and would only be achieved by a mobile operating system. This would significantly reduce travel time and costs and to a lesser extent the need for people to provide some support services back in the office. The cost of the two authorities providing and supporting this type of system would be expensive and would exceed any other efficiencies which would be achieved by bringing two services together.

## **Option 2: Adopt South Norfolk mobile IT solution for the Shared Service**

- 3.7 The Norfolk Building Control partnership has developed and implemented an integrated IT solution. This solution supports mobile working and allows on-line applications and automated billing. Surveyors are able to do their jobs without coming into the office every day: to collect their programmed site visits; and access and update records. There are also efficiencies in support services.
- 3.8 This system is fully operational in South Norfolk and is being implemented at the Kings Lynn office. As a result of the investment, the numbers of applications each officer deals with at the South Norfolk office is notably higher than at Kings Lynn.
- 3.9 South Norfolk is offering its IT system to the East Region Building Control partners and, due to the number of potential partners, has negotiated a significant saving in cost from the supplier. These savings will be passed on to all partners in terms of both set up and operational costs.
- 3.10 With this option, HDC and SCDC data would be transferred onto the partnership system, with appropriate access and provision for the data if the partnership ceased. HDC and SCDC would be able to make a step-change in the way services are delivered. South Norfolk has provided estimated set up and operation costs, however these need to be refined to reflect our exact requirements.
- 3.11 South Norfolk has advised that each cluster will be given DCLG transformation funding of £100,000 to help meet the IT set up costs. The use of which for option 2 and the other options will be determined as we develop a detailed business case with partners.
- 3.12 Approval is sought to develop a detailed business case for this option, combined with Option 1, to be the subject of a further report in Autumn 2014. The report will be supported by a draft legal agreement. This option is not dependent upon Options 3 and 4.

## **Option 3: Local Authority Building Control Cluster**

- 3.13 As stated above, South Norfolk DC is working with local authorities across the Eastern region to set up a Building Control partnership. Work is taking place within other counties to set up shared service arrangements that will form county clusters within a regional partnership. It is intended that each cluster will be represented on a Regional Board. South Norfolk is not being prescriptive about how each cluster should operate, recognising that one shape does not fit all and that there will be a need to respond to local organisational cultures, operations and customers.
- 3.14 Each cluster would form part the East Regional Building Control (ERBC) partnership. The ERBC and cluster arrangement offers potential benefits including additional service resiliency; potential to share costs of future service improvements, including internet self-service, opportunities to share best practice, secondment and other staff development options, and shared apprentice schemes.
- 3.15 All local authorities operation LABC services in Cambridgeshire and Bedfordshire, including Peterborough, have been asked if they would like to explore the viability of a cluster within the regional partnership.

- 3.16 Approval is sought to continue this work with authorities across Cambridgeshire and Bedfordshire to develop proposals for a LABC partnership. Any proposals would be the subject of future reports.

#### **Option 4: Regional Approved Inspector Company**

- 3.17 As referred to above, the Localism Act 2011 made provision for local authorities to operate on a commercial basis and set up as Approved Inspectors. There are strict restrictions and requirements, including rules regarding geographic boundaries.
- 3.18 South Norfolk DC has applied for Approved Inspector status to set up a Regional Company involving local clusters as equal shareholders. Each shareholder would receive a proportion of the profit share. South Norfolk DC has taken legal advice which has confirmed they can undertake work under a regional partnership arrangement in individual local authority areas. This arrangement would potentially benefit SCDC, HDC and the other partner authorities by enabling them to secure a proportion of the profit gained by the AI.
- 3.19 A significant amount of further work is required before the Regional Approved Inspector Company becomes established.
- 3.20 Approval is sought to continue to work with South Norfolk DC and local authorities across the region to develop a business case for a Regional Approved Inspector Company. Further approval will be required before any commitment is made.

#### **4. COMMENTS OF OVERVIEW & SCRUTINY PANEL**

- 4.1 The matter is due to be considered at the 15<sup>th</sup> July 2014 Overview and Scrutiny Panel (Environmental Well-Being). Comments will be circulated separately.

#### **5. KEY IMPACTS/RISKS? HOW WILL THEY BE ADDRESSED?**

- 5.1 There are potential benefits arising from the options in this report including significant income, but also risks associated with large IT projects and partnership working. They will be assessed in the proposed business case.

#### **6. WHAT ACTIONS WILL BE TAKEN/TIMETABLE FOR IMPLEMENTATION**

- 6.1 Approval is sought to develop a detailed business case for Options 1 and 2, to be the subject of a further report in Autumn 2014. The report will be supported by a draft legal agreement. Options 3 and 4 will take longer to properly investigate.

#### **7. LINK TO THE CORPORATE PLAN**

- 7.1 Ensuring we are a customer focused and service led council – The Corporate Plan states that we want to become more business-like and efficient in the way we deliver services, including investigating a programme of shared services.

## **8. CONSULTATION**

- 8.1 The Building Control teams at HDC and SCDC have been jointly briefed on the contents of this report.

## **9. LEGAL IMPLICATIONS**

- 9.1 A Memorandum of Understanding has been signed by SCDC, HDC and South Norfolk DC. In preparing a business case for a shared service and working in partnership with South Norfolk DC, a draft legal agreement will be prepared. Each authority is expected to obtain independent legal advice.

## **10. RESOURCE IMPLICATIONS**

- 10.1 The detailed financial implications will be considered carefully in the preparation of the business case for each option.
- 10.2 HDC and SCDC are not expected to bear the full costs associated with the recommended options, because South Norfolk DC has advised that DCLG transformation funding of £100,000 will be made available to each cluster. In addition, SCDC and HDC have bid for additional transformation funding to help develop partnerships.
- 10.3 The initial financial analysis shows a cost saving by year 5 in revenue costs for the LABC service compared to current costs. In addition, the proposed Approved Inspector Company is estimated to achieve significant profit.
- 10.4 SCDC is providing project management resources from existing approved budgets. If work continues on the cluster proposal, partners will be asked to make financial contributions.

## **11. OTHER IMPLICATIONS**

- 11.1 There will be staff implications arising from a shared service. These will be covered in more detail in the proposed business case.

## **12 REASONS FOR THE RECOMMENDED DECISIONS**

- 12.1 The Corporate Plan includes a commitment to investigate a programme of shared services. A range of options need to be explored to ensure the service will be efficient and resilient in the future.

## **13. LIST OF APPENDICES INCLUDED**

None

## **BACKGROUND PAPERS**

Shared Services Report to 10<sup>th</sup> July 2014 Overview and Scrutiny Panel (Economic Well-Being) and 10<sup>th</sup> July 2014 Cabinet.

## **CONTACT OFFICER**

**Andy Moffat, Head of Development – Tel No. 01480-388400**

This page is intentionally left blank



**CABINET**

**19th JULY 2014**

**REPRESENTATION ON ORGANISATIONS 2014/15  
(Report by the Head of Legal & Democratic Services)**

**1. INTRODUCTION**

- 1.1 The Council's representation on a variety of organisations and partnerships is reviewed annually. Listed in the attached schedule are those organisations/partnerships to which the Council appoints representatives for 2014/15: Part 1 refers to partnerships and Part 2 to general external bodies/groups.
- 1.2 A rolling review of partnerships – primarily to ensure that they have appropriate governance and contribute to Council or community objectives – is in place. This includes the compilation of additional information from organisations as to their aims and any implications of representation. External organisations are requested also to provide an induction process for newly appointed members.

**2. RECOMMENDATIONS**

- 2.1 The Cabinet are therefore invited to make their nominations were required to the organisations referred to in the schedule appended hereto.
- 2.2 In the event that changes or new appointments are required to the District Council's representation during the course of the year, the Corporate Team Manager, after consultation with the Deputy Executive Leader, be authorised to nominate alternative representatives as necessary.

**Contact Officer:** Helen Taylor, Senior Democratic Services Officer  
(01480) 388008

This page is intentionally left blank

## REPRESENTATIVES ON ORGANSATIONS 2014/15

<b>PARTNERSHIPS</b>	<b>Nominating/ Appointing Panel</b>	<b>Approx No. of Meetings Per Annum</b>	<b>Representative(s) 2013/2014</b>	<b>Representative(s) 2014/2015</b>	<b>HDC Contact Officer</b>
Cambridgeshire Health and Well-Being Board	Cabinet		Cllr R J West	Cllr R J West	Head of Community Services ( 388280
Cambridgeshire Future Transport – Cross Party Working Group	Cabinet		Cllr N J Guyatt (Scrutiny Rep: Cllr Kadic)	Cllr D B Dew (Scrutiny Rep: Cllr Kadic)	Transport Team Leader ) ( 388387
Cambridgeshire Horizons	Cabinet		Cllr N J Guyatt	Cllr R Howe	Corporate Director (Delivery) ( 388301
Cambridgeshire Older People's Partnership Board	Cabinet	4	Cllr R West	Cllr R J West	Housing Strategy Manager ( 388203
Cambridgeshire Community Safety Strategic Board (subject to review)	Cabinet	3/4	Cllr R Howe	Cllr T D Sanderson	Head of Community Services ( 388280
Cambridgeshire Police and Crime Panel	Cabinet	5	Councillor J D Ablewhite and Councillor S Criswell (Substitute)	Councillor J D Ablewhite and Councillor S Criswell (Substitute)	Corporate Director (Delivery) ( 388301
Consultation on Treasury Matters (Treasury Management Group)	Cabinet		Cllrs J D Ablewhite, J A Gray, N J Guyatt and T V Rogers	Cllrs J D Ablewhite, J A Gray, R Howe and R Harrison	Head of Resources Services ( 388103
East of England Local Government Association	Cabinet	4/5	Cllr J D Ablewhite	Cllr J D Ablewhite	PA to the Executive Leader ( 388002
Great Fen Project Steering Committee	Cabinet	11	Cllr D B Dew and Mr S Ingram	Cllr P Mitchell and Mr A Moffat	Head of Development ( 388400

<b>PARTNERSHIPS</b>	<b>Nominating/ Appointing Panel</b>	<b>Approx No. of Meetings Per Annum</b>	<b>Representative(s) 2013/2014</b>	<b>Representative(s) 2014/2015</b>	<b>HDC Contact Officer</b>
Huntingdonshire Local Strategic Partnership – Children and Young People	Cabinet	4	Cllr R Howe	Cllr T D Sanderson	Corporate Team Manager ( 388263
Growth & Infrastructure		4	Cllr N J Guyatt	Cllr D B Dew	Head of Development ( 388400
Health and Well-Being		4	Cllr R Howe	Cllr T D Sanderson	Head of Community Services ( 388280
Huntingdonshire Community Safety Partnership		6	Cllr R Howe	Cllr T D Sanderson	Head of Community Services ( 388280
Huntingdonshire Strategic Partnership Board	Cabinet	4/5 various locations – hosted by main partners	Cllrs J D Ablewhite and N J Guyatt	Cllrs J D Ablewhite and R Howe	Corporate Team Manager ( 388263
Joint Strategic Planning Member Board	Cabinet	6	Cllr J D Ablewhite, N J Guyatt and M Shellens	Cllrs J D Ablewhite, D B Dew and M Shellens	Corporate Director (Delivery) ( 388301
Neighbourhood Management Group - Eynesbury	Cabinet	6	Cllr A Hansard	Cllr A Hansard	Community Health Manager ( 388377
Recycling in Cambridgeshire and Peterborough Board (formerly Waste Management and Environment Forum)	Cabinet	6	Cllr D M Tysoe	Cllr D M Tysoe	Head of Operations ( 388635

ORGANISATION	Nominating/ Appointing Panel	Approx No. of Meetings Per Annum	Representative(s) 2013/2014	Representative(s) 2014/2015	HDC Contact Officer
Cambridgeshire Chambers of Commerce – Huntingdonshire Area	Cabinet	12 (1 <sup>st</sup> Wed of every month at 8.30am)	Cllr T D Sanderson	Cllr T D Sanderson	Corporate Team Manager ( 388263
Cambridgeshire Armed Forces Community Covenant Board	Cabinet	4	Cllr R Harrison	Cllr R Harrison	Corporate Director (Delivery) ( 388301
Cromwell Museum Management Cttee	Cabinet	2	Cllr M G Baker and Mr J Morgan	Cllr M G Baker and Mr J Morgan	Senior Democratic Services Officer ( 388008
Envar Ltd, St Ives Composting Facility – Site Liaison Forum	Cabinet	1	Cllr G J Bull	Cllr G J Bull	Head of Community Services ( 388280
Huntingdon Association of Community Transport	Cabinet		Cllr Ms L Kadić	Cllr Ms L Kadić	Transport Team Leader ( 388387
Huntingdon Freeman's' Trust (4 year term expires June 2014)	Cabinet	12	Mr J D Fell	Mr J D Fell	Senior Democratic Services Officer ( 388008
Huntingdonshire Flood Forum	Cabinet	2	Cllr D M Tysoe	Cllr D M Tysoe	Project and Assets Manager ( 388380
Huntingdonshire Volunteer Centre -  District	Cabinet	3 & AGM	Cllr D Harty/ Mr L M Simpson	Cllr D Harty/ Mr L M Simpson	Community Health Manager ( 388377
-----		-----			

ORGANISATION	Nominating/ Appointing Panel	Approx No. of Meetings Per Annum	Representative(s) 2013/2014	Representative(s) 2014/2015	HDC Contact Officer
Internal Drainage Boards – Alconbury and Ellington	Cabinet	4	Cllrs K M Baker, M G Baker, Messrs C Allen, E K Heads and L M Simpson	Cllrs K M Baker, M G Baker, Messrs C Allen, E K Heads and L M Simpson	Project and Assets Manager ( 388380
Benwick		2	Mr P Lummis	Mr P Lummis	Project and Assets Manager ( 388380
Bluntisham		2	Mr P Lummis	Mr P Lummis	Project and Assets Manager ( 388380
Conington and Holme		½	Cllr P G Mitchell and Mr J S Watt together with Mr C Allen	Cllr P G Mitchell and Mr J S Watt together with Mr C Allen	Project and Assets Manager ( 388380
Ramsey First (Hollow)		2	Mr N Orr	Mr C Allen or nominee	Project and Assets Manager ( 388380
Ramsey Fourth (Middle Moor)		2	Mr N Orr and one vacancy	Mr C Allen or nominee and one vacancy	Project and Assets Manager ( 388380
Ramsey, Upwood and Great Raveley		4	Cllr P L E Bucknell and Mr C Allen and one vacancy	Cllr P L E Bucknell and Mr C Allen and one vacancy	Project and Assets Manager ( 388380
Sawtry		1	Cllrs R G Tuplin and D Tysoe, Mr C Allen, *** Chairman of Sawtry Parish Council and Mrs J Day	Cllrs R G Tuplin and D Tysoe, Mr C Allen, *** Chairman of Sawtry Parish Council and one vacancy	Project and Assets Manager ( 388380
Sutton and Mepal		2	Mr P Lummis	Mr P Lummis	Project and Assets Manager ( 388380
The Ramsey		4	Cllr E R Butler and Mr N Orr and one vacancy	Cllr E R Butler, Mr C Allen or nominee and one vacancy	Project and Assets Manager ( 388380
Warboys, Somersham and Pidley		2	Cllrs G J Bull and Criswell and Mr P Lummis and Mr M F Newman	Cllrs G J Bull and Criswell and Mr P Lummis and Mr M F Newman	Project and Assets Manager ( 388380
Whittlesey		4	Mr C Allen	Mr C Allen	Project and Assets Manager ( 388380
Woodwalton Drainage Commissioners	1	Mr M F Newman	Mr M F Newman	Project and Assets Manager ( 388380	

ORGANISATION	Nominating/ Appointing Panel	Approx No. of Meetings Per Annum	Representative(s) 2013/2014	Representative(s) 2014/2015	HDC Contact Officer
Holmewood & District		1	Cllr G J Bull	Cllr G J Bull	Project and Assets Manager ( 388380)
Little Gransden Aerodrome Consultative Committee	Cabinet	2	Cllr R J West	Cllr R J West	Head of Development ( 388400)
Local Water Forum	Cabinet	4	Cllr D M Tysoe	Cllr D M Tysoe	Corporate Director (Delivery) ( 388301)
Luminus Homes	Cabinet	2	Cllrs R Fuller, N J Guyatt, M Shellens, Mr L M Simpson and one vacancy.	Cllrs R Fuller and M Shellens, Mr N J Guyatt and L M Simpson and one vacancy.	Housing Needs and Resources Manager ( 388220)
Luminus group (parent)	Cabinet	10	Mr L M Simpson	Mr L M Simpson	Housing Needs and Resources Manager ( 388220)
Oak Foundation (sheltered/charitable)		3	Cllr D Harty	Cllr D Harty	Housing Needs and Resources Manager ( 388220)
Middle Level Commissioners	Cabinet	2 (and Annual Inspection)	Cllr P Mitchell	Cllr P Mitchell	Project and Assets Manager ( 388380)
Oxmoor Community Action Group (OCAG)	Cabinet	6	Cllr A Mackender-Lawrence	Cllr A Mackender-Lawrence	Senior Democratic Services Officer ( 388008)
Pensions Consultative Group	Cabinet	2/3	Cllr T V Rogers	Cllr J A Gray	Head of Resources ( 388103)
Red Tile Wind Farm Trust Fund Ltd (formerly Red Tile Wind Farm Community Fund)	Cabinet	4	Cllr P L E Bucknell	Cllr P L E Bucknell	Head of Community Services ( 388280)

ORGANISATION	Nominating/ Appointing Panel	Approx No. of Meetings Per Annum	Representative(s) 2013/2014	Representative(s) 2014/2015	HDC Contact Officer
Stilton Children and Young People's Facilities Association	Cabinet	4	Cllr P G Mitchell	Cllr P G Mitchell	Community Health Manager ( 388377)
Town Centre Management Initiatives/Partnerships/ Management Team – Huntingdon Town Partnership	Cabinet	11	Cllr T D Sanderson	Cllr T D Sanderson	Head of Development ( 388400)
St Ives Town Centre Management Team		11	Cllr J W Davies	Cllr J W Davies	Project and Assets Manager ( 388380)
Trustees of Kimbolton School Foundation (3 year term expires June 2014)	Cabinet	3	Cllr J A Gray	Cllr J A Gray	Senior Democratic Services Officer ( 388008)

Cambridgeshire Consultative Group for the Fletton Brickworks Industry	Licensing		Cllr E R Butler	Cllr E R Butler	Head of Community Services ( 388280)
Little Barford Power Station Liaison Committee	Licensing	1	Cllr A Hansard	Cllr A Hansard	Head of Community Services ( 388280)
Needingworth Quarry Local Liaison Committee	Licensing		Cllrs T V Rogers and R Carter	Cllr R Carter and M Francis	Head of Community Services ( 388280)
Warboys Landfill Local Liaison Group	Licensing	1	Cllr P L E Bucknell and Head of Environmental and Community Health Services or nominee	Cllr P L E Bucknell and Head of Community Services or nominee	Head of Community Services ( 388280)

\*\*\* Nomination should be Chairman of Sawtry Parish Council and not named individual.